

# C790 Series

**User's Guide** 

January 2011 www.lexmark.com

Machine type(s):

5062

Model(s):

210, 230, 235

# Contents

Safety information	6
Learning about the printer	8
Thank you for choosing this printer!	
Finding information about the printer	
Selecting a location for the printer	9
Printer configurations	
Understanding the printer control panel	11
Understanding the home screen	13
Understanding the home screen	13
Using the touch-screen buttons	14
Customizing the home screen	17
Accessing the Embedded Web Server	17
Activating the home screen applications	17
Exporting and importing a configuration using the Embedded Web Server	19
Additional printer setup	21
Installing internal options	21
Order of installation	39
Installing optional trays	39
Supported finishing features	40
Attaching cables	42
Verifying printer setup	43
Setting up the printer software	44
Setting up wireless printing	45
Installing the printer on a wired network	51
Changing port settings after installing a new network Internal Solutions Port	53
Setting up serial printing	54
Minimizing your printer's environmental impact	56
Saving paper and toner	56
Saving energy	57
Recycling	50

Loading paper and specialty media	61
Setting the paper size and type	61
Configuring Universal paper settings	61
Loading the standard or optional 550-sheet tray	62
Loading the 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder	65
Loading the multipurpose feeder	67
Linking and unlinking trays	69
Paper and specialty media guide	72
Paper guidelines	72
Storing paper	74
Supported paper sizes, types, and weights	75
Printing	78
Printing a document	78
Printing from a flash drive	79
Printing specialty documents	81
Printing confidential and other held jobs	83
Printing information pages	84
Canceling a print job	85
Understanding printer menus	87
Menus list	87
Supplies menu	88
Paper menu	89
Reports menu	101
Network/Ports menu	102
Security menu	115
Settings menu	119
Help menu	143
Securing the printer hard disk and other installed memory	145
Statement of Volatility	145
Erasing volatile memory	146
Erasing non-volatile memory	146
Erasing printer hard disk memory	147
Configuring printer hard disk encryption	148

Cleaning the exterior of the printer       15         Cleaning the printhead lenses       15         Storing supplies       15         Checking the status of supplies       15         Ordering supplies       15         Moving the printer       15         Moving the printer       15         Administrative support       16         Finding advanced networking and administrator information       16         Using the Embedded Web Server       16         Checking the virtual display       16         Checking the status of the printer       16         Setting up e-mail alerts       16         Viewing reports       16         Restoring factory default settings       16         Clearing jams       16         Avoiding jams       16         Understanding jam numbers and locations       16         202 paper jam       16         202 203 paper jam       16         202 203 paper jam       16         203 paper jam       16         204 paper jam       16         205 paper jam       16         207 203 paper jams       16         208 paper jam       16         209 paper jam       16	Maintaining the printer	150
Storing supplies       .15         Checking the status of supplies       .15         Ordering supplies       .15         Replacing supplies       .15         Moving the printer       .15         Moving the printer       .15         Administrative support       .16         Finding advanced networking and administrator information       .16         Using the Embedded Web Server       .16         Checking the virtual display       .16         Checking the status of the printer       .16         Setting up e-mail alerts       .16         Viewing reports       .16         Restoring factory default settings       .16         Clearing jams       .16         Avoiding jams       .16         Understanding jam numbers and locations       .16         200 paper jam       .16         201 paper jam       .16         202-203 paper jams       .16         203 paper jam       .16         204 paper jam       .16         205 paper jam       .16         205 paper jam       .16         207 paper jam       .16         208 paper jam       .16         209 paper jam       .16	Cleaning the exterior of the printer	150
Checking the status of supplies       .15.         Ordering supplies       .15.         Replacing supplies       .15.         Moving the printer       .15.         Administrative support       .160         Finding advanced networking and administrator information       .160         Using the Embedded Web Server       .160         Checking the virtual display       .160         Checking the status of the printer       .160         Setting up e-mail alerts       .16         Viewing reports       .16         Restoring factory default settings       .16         Clearing jams       .16         Understanding jam numbers and locations       .16         200 paper jam       .16         201 paper jam       .16         202 –203 paper jam       .16         203 paper jam       .16         231 –239 paper jams       .16         24x paper jam       .16         250 paper jam       .16	Cleaning the printhead lenses	150
Ordering supplies       .15.         Replacing supplies       .15.         Moving the printer       .15.         Administrative support       .16         Finding advanced networking and administrator information       .16         Using the Embedded Web Server       .16         Checking the virtual display       .16         Checking the status of the printer       .16         Setting up e-mail alerts       .16         Viewing reports       .16         Restoring factory default settings       .16         Clearing jams       .16         Understanding jam numbers and locations       .16         200 paper jam       .16         201 paper jam       .16         202 paper jam       .16         203 paper jam       .16         204 paper jam       .16         205 paper jam       .16         207 paper jam       .16         208 paper jam       .16         209 paper jam       .16         201 paper jam       .16         202 paper jam       .16         203 paper jam       .16         204 paper jam       .16         205 paper jam       .16         207 paper jam	Storing supplies	151
Replacing supplies       .15         Moving the printer       .15         Administrative support       .16         Finding advanced networking and administrator information       .16         Using the Embedded Web Server       .16         Checking the virtual display       .16         Checking the status of the printer       .16         Setting up e-mail alerts       .16         Viewing reports       .16         Restoring factory default settings       .16         Clearing jams       .16         Avoiding jams       .16         Understanding jam numbers and locations       .16         200 paper jam       .16         201 paper jam       .16         202-203 paper jams       .16         231-239 paper jams       .16         231-239 paper jams       .16         24x paper jam       .16         250 paper jam       .16         24x paper jam       .16         250 paper jam <td>Checking the status of supplies</td> <td>152</td>	Checking the status of supplies	152
Moving the printer       .15         Administrative support       160         Finding advanced networking and administrator information       .16         Using the Embedded Web Server       .16         Checking the virtual display       .16         Checking the status of the printer       .16         Setting up e-mail alerts       .16         Viewing reports       .16         Restoring factory default settings       .16         Clearing jams       .16         Avoiding jams       .16         Understanding jam numbers and locations       .16         200 paper jam       .16         201 paper jam       .16         202-203 paper jams       .16         230 paper jam       .16         231-239 paper jams       .16         24x paper jam       .16         250 paper jam       .16         400-403 and 460-461 paper jams       .17         4455 staple jam       .17         455 staple jam       .17         Troubleshooting       .17         Checking an unresponsive printer       .17         Understanding printer messages       .17	Ordering supplies	152
Administrative support. 160 Finding advanced networking and administrator information. 160 Using the Embedded Web Server. 160 Checking the virtual display. 160 Checking the status of the printer. 160 Setting up e-mail alerts. 160 Viewing reports. 160 Restoring factory default settings. 160 Clearing jams. 160 Clearing jams. 160 Understanding jam numbers and locations. 160 Understanding jam numbers and locations. 160 200 paper jam. 160 201 paper jam. 160 202-203 paper jams. 160 203 paper jam. 160 203 paper jam. 160 204 paper jam. 160 205 paper jam. 160 207 paper jam. 160 208 paper jam. 160 209 paper jam. 160 209 paper jam. 160 201 paper jam. 160 201 paper jam. 160 201 paper jam. 160 202 paper jam. 160 203 paper jam. 160 204 paper jam. 160 205 paper jam. 160 207 paper jam. 160 208 paper jam. 160 209 paper jam. 160 200 pap	Replacing supplies	154
Finding advanced networking and administrator information       16i         Using the Embedded Web Server       16i         Checking the virtual display       16i         Checking the status of the printer       16i         Setting up e-mail alerts       16         Viewing reports       16         Restoring factory default settings       16         Clearing jams       16i         Avoiding jams       16i         Understanding jam numbers and locations       16i         200 paper jam       16i         201 paper jam       16i         202-203 paper jams       16i         230 paper jam       16i         231-239 paper jams       16i         24x paper jam       16i         250 paper jam       16i         400-403 and 460-461 paper jams       17i         431-454, and 456-458 paper jams       17i         455 staple jam       17         455 staple jam       17         455 staple jam       17         Understanding printer messages       17         Understanding printer messages       17	Moving the printer	158
Using the Embedded Web Server.       166         Checking the virtual display.       166         Checking the status of the printer.       166         Setting up e-mail alerts.       16         Viewing reports.       16         Restoring factory default settings.       16         Clearing jams.       16         Avoiding jams.       16         Understanding jam numbers and locations.       16         200 paper jam.       16         201 paper jam.       16         202-203 paper jams.       16         230 paper jam.       16         231-239 paper jams.       16         24x paper jam.       16         250 paper jam.       16         400-403 and 460-461 paper jams.       17         431-454, and 456-458 paper jams.       17         455 staple jam.       17         455 staple jam.       17         Checking an unresponsive printer.       17         Understanding printer messages.       17	Administrative support	160
Checking the virtual display       16         Checking the status of the printer       16         Setting up e-mail alerts       16         Viewing reports       16         Restoring factory default settings       16         Clearing jams       16         Avoiding jams       16         Understanding jam numbers and locations       16         200 paper jam       16         201 paper jam       16         202-203 paper jams       16         230 paper jam       16         231-239 paper jams       16         24x paper jam       16         250 paper jam       16         400-403 and 460-461 paper jams       17         431-454, and 456-458 paper jams       17         435 staple jam       17         Troubleshooting       17         Checking an unresponsive printer       17         Understanding printer messages       17	Finding advanced networking and administrator information	160
Checking the status of the printer       16         Setting up e-mail alerts       16         Viewing reports       16         Restoring factory default settings       16         Clearing jams       16         Avoiding jams       16         Understanding jam numbers and locations       16         200 paper jam       16         201 paper jam       16         202-203 paper jams       16         230 paper jam       16         231-239 paper jams       16         250 paper jam       16         250 paper jam       16         400-403 and 460-461 paper jams       17         431-454, and 456-458 paper jams       17         435 staple jam       17         Troubleshooting       17         Checking an unresponsive printer       17         Understanding printer messages       17	Using the Embedded Web Server	160
Setting up e-mail alerts.       16         Viewing reports.       16         Restoring factory default settings.       16         Clearing jams.       16         Avoiding jams.       16         Understanding jam numbers and locations.       16         200 paper jam.       16         201 paper jam.       16         202-203 paper jams.       16         230 paper jam.       16         231-239 paper jams.       16         24x paper jam.       16         250 paper jam.       16         400-403 and 460-461 paper jams.       17         431-454, and 456-458 paper jams.       17         455 staple jam.       17         Troubleshooting.       17         Checking an unresponsive printer.       17         Understanding printer messages.       17	Checking the virtual display	160
Viewing reports.       16         Restoring factory default settings.       16         Clearing jams       16         Avoiding jams.       16         Understanding jam numbers and locations       16         200 paper jam.       16         201 paper jam.       16         202-203 paper jams.       16         230 paper jam.       16         231-239 paper jams.       16         24x paper jam.       16         250 paper jam.       16         400-403 and 460-461 paper jams.       17         431-454, and 456-458 paper jams.       17         455 staple jam.       17         Troubleshooting.       17         Checking an unresponsive printer.       17         Understanding printer messages.       17	Checking the status of the printer	160
Restoring factory default settings.       16.         Clearing jams.       16.         Avoiding jams.       16.         Understanding jam numbers and locations.       16.         200 paper jam.       16.         201 paper jam.       16.         202-203 paper jams.       16.         230 paper jam.       16.         231-239 paper jams.       16.         24x paper jam.       16.         250 paper jam.       16.         400-403 and 460-461 paper jams.       17.         431-454, and 456-458 paper jams.       17.         435 staple jam.       17.         Troubleshooting.       17.         Checking an unresponsive printer.       17.         Understanding printer messages.       17.	Setting up e-mail alerts	161
Clearing jams.       163         Avoiding jams.       166         Understanding jam numbers and locations.       166         200 paper jam.       166         201 paper jam.       166         202-203 paper jams.       166         230 paper jam.       166         231-239 paper jams.       166         24x paper jam.       166         250 paper jam.       166         400-403 and 460-461 paper jams.       176         431-454, and 456-458 paper jams.       17         455 staple jam.       17         Troubleshooting.       17         Checking an unresponsive printer.       17         Understanding printer messages.       17	Viewing reports	161
Avoiding jams	Restoring factory default settings	162
Understanding jam numbers and locations       16         200 paper jam       16         201 paper jam       16         202–203 paper jams       16         230 paper jam       16         231–239 paper jams       16         24x paper jam       16         250 paper jam       16         400–403 and 460–461 paper jams       17         431–454, and 456–458 paper jams       17         455 staple jam       17         Troubleshooting       17         Checking an unresponsive printer       17         Understanding printer messages       17	Clearing jams	163
200 paper jam.       16         201 paper jam.       16         202–203 paper jams.       16         230 paper jam.       16         231–239 paper jams.       16         24x paper jam.       16         250 paper jam.       16         400–403 and 460–461 paper jams.       17         431–454, and 456–458 paper jams.       17         455 staple jam.       17         Troubleshooting.       17         Checking an unresponsive printer.       17         Understanding printer messages.       17	Avoiding jams	163
201 paper jam.       16         202–203 paper jams.       16         230 paper jam.       16         231–239 paper jams.       16         24x paper jam.       16         250 paper jam.       16         400–403 and 460–461 paper jams.       17         431–454, and 456–458 paper jams.       17         455 staple jam.       17         Troubleshooting.       17         Checking an unresponsive printer.       17         Understanding printer messages.       17	Understanding jam numbers and locations	163
202–203 paper jams.       16         230 paper jam.       16         231–239 paper jams.       16         24x paper jam.       16         250 paper jam.       16         400–403 and 460–461 paper jams.       17         431–454, and 456–458 paper jams.       17         455 staple jam.       17         Troubleshooting.       17         Checking an unresponsive printer.       17         Understanding printer messages.       17	200 paper jam	165
230 paper jam.       16         231–239 paper jams.       16         24x paper jam.       16         250 paper jam.       16         400–403 and 460–461 paper jams.       17         431–454, and 456–458 paper jams.       17         455 staple jam.       17         Troubleshooting.       17         Checking an unresponsive printer.       17         Understanding printer messages.       17	201 paper jam	165
231–239 paper jams.       166         24x paper jam.       166         250 paper jam.       166         400–403 and 460–461 paper jams.       176         431–454, and 456–458 paper jams.       17         455 staple jam.       17         Checking an unresponsive printer.       17         Understanding printer messages.       17	202–203 paper jams	166
24x paper jam.       16         250 paper jam.       16         400–403 and 460–461 paper jams.       17         431–454, and 456–458 paper jams.       17         455 staple jam.       17         Troubleshooting.       17         Checking an unresponsive printer.       17         Understanding printer messages.       17	230 paper jam	167
250 paper jam	231–239 paper jams	168
400–403 and 460–461 paper jams	24x paper jam	168
431–454, and 456–458 paper jams	250 paper jam	169
455 staple jam	400–403 and 460–461 paper jams	170
Troubleshooting	431–454, and 456–458 paper jams	171
Checking an unresponsive printer	455 staple jam	171
Understanding printer messages	Troubleshooting	174
	Checking an unresponsive printer	174
Solving printing problems18	Understanding printer messages	174
	Solving printing problems	189

Solving home screen applications problems	193
Solving option problems	193
Solving paper feed problems	196
Solving print quality problems	197
Solving color quality problems	208
Embedded Web Server does not open	211
Contacting customer support	211
Notices	212
Product information	212
Edition notice	212
Power consumption	216
Index	227

## **Safety information**

Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

Do not place or use this product near water or wet locations.



**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** This product uses a laser. Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

This product uses a printing process that heats the print media, and the heat may cause the media to release emissions. You must understand the section in your operating instructions that discusses the guidelines for selecting print media to avoid the possibility of harmful emissions.



**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The lithium battery in this product is not intended to be replaced. There is a danger of explosion if a lithium battery is incorrectly replaced. Do not recharge, disassemble, or incinerate a lithium battery. Discard used lithium batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.



**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.



**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.



**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Before moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Turn the printer off using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer before moving it.
- Lift the printer off the optional drawer, and set it aside instead of trying to lift the drawer and printer at the same time.

Note: Use the handholds located on both sides of the printer to lift it off the optional drawer.

Use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.



**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.



**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Make sure that all external connections (such as Ethernet and telephone system connections) are properly installed in their marked plug-in ports.

This product is designed, tested, and approved to meet strict global safety standards with the use of specific manufacturer's components. The safety features of some parts may not always be obvious. The manufacturer is not responsible for the use of other replacement parts.



**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Do not cut, twist, bind, crush, or place heavy objects on the power cord. Do not subject the power cord to abrasion or stress. Do not pinch the power cord between objects such as furniture and walls. If any of these things happen, a risk of fire or electrical shock results. Inspect the power cord regularly for signs of such problems. Remove the power cord from the electrical outlet before inspecting it.

Refer service or repairs, other than those described in the user documentation, to a professional service person.



**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** To avoid the risk of electric shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.



**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.



**CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see **www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters**.



**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each paper drawer or tray separately. Keep all other drawers or trays closed until needed.

SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.

## **Learning about the printer**

## Thank you for choosing this printer!

We've worked hard to make sure it will meet your needs.

To start using your new printer right away, use the setup materials that came with the printer, and then skim the *User's Guide* to learn how to perform basic tasks. To get the most out of your printer, read the *User's Guide* carefully, and make sure you check the latest updates on our Web site.

We're committed to delivering performance and value with our printers, and we want to make sure you're satisfied. If you do encounter any problems along the way, one of our knowledgeable support representatives will be delighted to help you get back on track fast. And if you find something we could do better, please let us know. After all, you are the reason we do what we do, and your suggestions help us do it better.

## Finding information about the printer

What are you looking for?	Find it here
Initial setup instructions:  Connecting the printer Installing the printer software	Setup documentation—The setup documentation came with the printer and is also available on the Lexmark Web site at http://support.lexmark.com.
Additional setup and instructions for using the printer:  Selecting and storing paper and specialty media  Loading paper  Configuring printer settings  Viewing and printing documents and photos  Setting up and using the printer software  Configuring the printer on a network (depending on your printer model)  Caring for and maintaining the printer  Troubleshooting and solving problems	User's Guide—The User's Guide is available on the Software and Documentation CD. For updates, check our Web site at http://support.lexmark.com.
Instructions for:  • Installing the printer using Guided or Advanced wireless setup  • Connecting the printer to an Ethernet or a wireless network  • Troubleshooting printer connection problems	Networking Guide— Open the Software and Documentation CD, and then look for Printer and Software Documentation under the Pubs folder. From the list of publications, click the <b>Networking Guide</b> link.

What are you looking for?	Find it here
Help using the printer software	Windows or Mac Help—Open a printer software program or application, and then click <b>Help</b> .
	Click ? to view context-sensitive information.
	Notes:
	The Help installs automatically with the printer software.
	<ul> <li>The printer software is located in the printer Program folder or on the desktop, depending on your operating system.</li> </ul>
Latest supplemental information, updates, and technical support:  • Documentation	Lexmark Support Web site— http://support.lexmark.com
<ul> <li>Driver downloads</li> <li>Live chat support</li> <li>E-mail support</li> <li>Telephone support</li> </ul>	Note: Select your country or region, and then select your product to view the appropriate support site.  Support telephone numbers and hours of operation for your country or region can be found on the Support Web site or on the printed warranty that came with your printer.  Record the following information (located on the store receipt and at the back of the printer), and have it ready when you contact support so they may serve you faster:  • Machine Type number  • Serial number  • Date purchased  • Store where purchased
Warranty information	<ul> <li>Warranty information varies by country or region:</li> <li>In the US—See the Statement of Limited Warranty included with this printer, or at http://support.lexmark.com.</li> <li>In other countries and regions—See the printed</li> </ul>

## Selecting a location for the printer

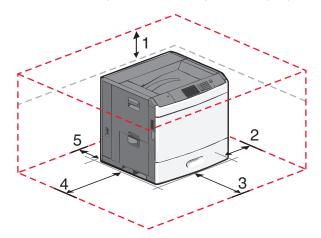


**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

When selecting a location for the printer, leave enough room to open trays, covers, and doors. If you plan to install any options, leave enough room for them too. It is important to:

- Make sure airflow in the room meets the latest revision of the ASHRAE 62 standard or the CEN Technical Committee 156 standard.
- Provide a flat, sturdy, and stable surface.
- Keep the printer:
  - Away from the direct airflow of air conditioners, heaters, or ventilators
  - Free from direct sunlight, humidity extremes, or temperature fluctuations

- Clean, dry, and free of dust
- Allow the following recommended amount of space around the printer for proper ventilation:



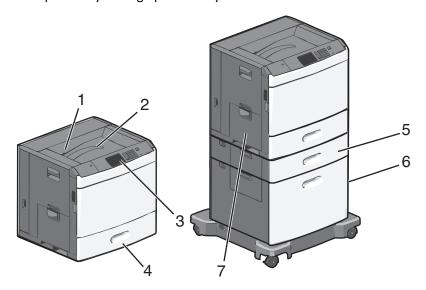
1	152.4 mm (6.0 in.)
2	101.6 mm (4.0 in.)
3	609.6 mm (24.0 in.)
4	381 mm (15.0 in.)
5	304.8 mm (12.0 in.)

## **Printer configurations**



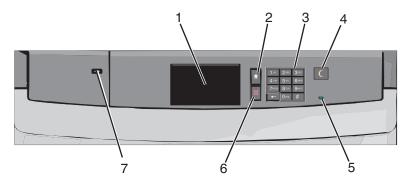
**CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see **www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters**.

You can configure your basic printer by adding optional trays.



1	Standard exit bin	
2	Wire bail	
3	Printer control panel	
4	Standard 550-sheet tray	
5	Optional 550-sheet tray	
6	Optional 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder	
7	Multipurpose feeder	

# Understanding the printer control panel



Item		Description
1	Display	Shows the status of the printer
2	Home	Lets you navigate back to the home screen
3	Keypad	Allows you to enter numbers, letters, or symbols on the printer

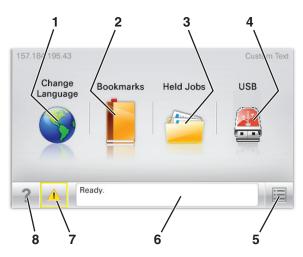
Item		Description
4	Sleep	Enables Sleep Mode or Hibernate Mode
		The following are the statuses of the indicator light and the Sleep button:
		• Entering or waking from Sleep Mode—The indicator light is illuminated solid green, Sleep button is unilluminated.
		<ul> <li>Operating in Sleep Mode—The indicator light is illuminated solid green, Sleep button is illuminated solid amber.</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Entering or waking from Hibernate Mode—The indicator light is illuminated solid green, Sleep button is illuminated blinking amber.</li> </ul>
		• Operating in Hibernate Mode—The indicator light is unilluminated, Sleep button is blinking amber for 1/10 of a second, then go completely unilluminated for 1.9 seconds in pulsing pattern.
		The following actions wake the printer from Sleep Mode:
		Touching the screen or any hard button presses.
		Opening an input tray, cover, or door.
		Sending a print job from the computer.
		Performing a Power On Reset (POR) with the main power switch.
5	Indicator light	Off—The printer is off.
		Blinking green—The printer is warming up, processing data, or printing.
		Solid green—The printer is on, but idle.
		Solid red—Operator intervention is needed.
6	Stop/Cancel	Stops all printer activity
		<b>Note:</b> A list of options is displayed once <b>Stopped</b> appears on the display.
7	USB port	Allows you to connect a USB Bluetooth adapter, or a flash drive to the printer
		Note: Only the front USB port supports flash drives.

# **Understanding the home screen**

## **Understanding the home screen**

When the printer is turned on, the display shows a basic screen, referred to as the home screen. Use the home screen buttons and icons to initiate an action.

**Note:** Your home screen, icons, and the buttons may vary depending on your home screen customization settings, administrative setup, and active embedded solutions.



Touch		То
1	Change Language	Change the primary language of the printer.
2	Bookmarks	Create, organize, and save a set of bookmarks (URLs) into a tree view of folders and file links.
		<b>Note:</b> The tree view does not include bookmarks created within <b>Forms and Favorites</b> , and the ones in the tree are not usable from within <b>Forms and Favorites</b> .
3	Held Jobs	Display all current held jobs.
4	USB or USB Thumbdrive	View, select, or print photos and documents from a flash drive.
		<b>Note:</b> This icon appears only when you return to the home screen while a memory card or flash drive is connected to the printer.
5	Menus	Access printer menus.
		<b>Note:</b> These menus are available only when the printer is in the <b>Ready</b> state.
6	Status message bar	Show the current printer status such as <b>Ready</b> or <b>Busy</b> .
		• Show printer conditions such as Fuser missing or Cartridge Low.
		Show intervention messages and the instructions on how to clear them.
7	Status/Supplies	Display a warning or error message whenever the printer requires intervention to continue processing.
		<ul> <li>Access the messages screen for more information on the message, and how to clear it.</li> </ul>

Touch		То
8	Tips	Open a context-sensitive Help information on the touch screen.

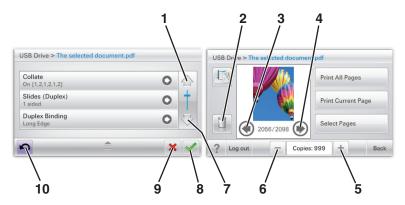
This may also appear on the home screen:

Touch	То
Search Held Jobs	Search current held jobs.

## Using the touch-screen buttons

**Note:** Your home screen, icons, and buttons may vary depending on your home screen customization settings, administrative setup, and active embedded solutions.

#### Sample touch screen



	Touch	То
1	Up arrow	Scroll up.
2	Delete folder	Delete the file you selected.
3	Left arrow	Scroll to the left.
	•	

	Touch	То
4	Right arrow	Scroll to the right.
5	Right scroll increase	Scroll to another value in increasing order.
6	Left scroll decrease	Scroll to another value in decreasing order.
7	Down arrow	Scroll down.
8	Accept	Save a setting.
9	Cancel	<ul> <li>Cancel an action or a selection.</li> <li>Cancel out a screen and return to the previous screen.</li> </ul>
10	Back	Navigate back to the previous screen.

## Other touch-screen buttons

Touch	То
Exit	Exit from the current screen to the home screen.
Radio button	Select or clear an item.

#### **Features**

Feature	Description
Menu trail line:  Menus > Settings > Print Settings > Number of Copies	A menu trail line is located at the top of each menu screen. This feature acts as a trail, showing the path taken to arrive at the current menu. It gives the exact location within the menus.
	Number of Copies is not underlined since this is the current screen. If you touch an underlined word on the Number of Copies screen before the Number of Copies is set and saved, then the selection is not saved, and does not become the default setting.
Attendance message alert	If an attendance message affects a function, then this icon appears and the red indicator light blinks.
Warning	If an error condition occurs, then this icon appears.

## **Customizing the home screen**

#### Notes:

- Your home screen, icons, and buttons may vary depending on your home screen customization settings, administrative setup, and active embedded applications. Some applications are supported only on select printer models.
- There may be additional solutions and applications available for purchase. To learn more, visit **www.lexmark.com**. Or, inquire at your point of purchase.

## **Accessing the Embedded Web Server**

Type your printer IP address or host name in the address field of your Web browser.

**Note:** If you do not know the IP address or host name of the printer, then you can:

- View the information on the printer control panel home screen, or in the TCP/IP section under the Network/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or menu settings page, and then locate the information in the TCP/IP section.

## Showing or hiding icons on the home screen

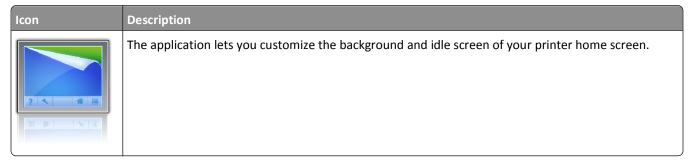
- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings > General Settings > Home screen customization**.

  A list of basic printer functions appears.
- **2** Select the check boxes to specify which icons appear on the printer home screen. Cleared check box items are hidden.
- 3 Click Submit.

## Activating the home screen applications

For detailed information about configuring and using home screen applications, visit the Lexmark Web site at http://support.lexmark.com.

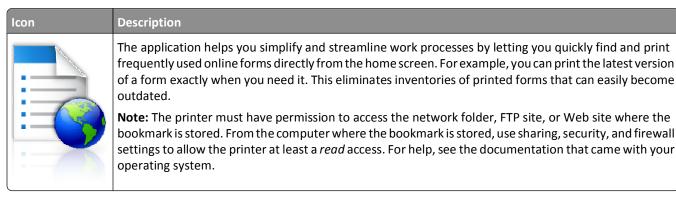
#### **Background and Idle Screen**



To change the background of the printer home screen using the printer control panel, do the following:

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:
  Change Background > select background to use
- **2** Touch ✓.

#### **Forms and Favorites**



To configure Forms and Favorites, do the following:

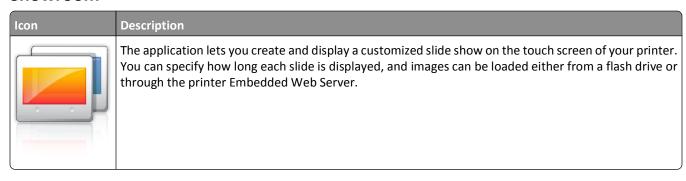
- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click Settings > Device Solutions > Solutions (eSF) > Forms and Favorites.
- **2** Define the bookmarks, and then customize the settings.
- 3 Click Apply.

To use the application, touch **Forms and Favorites** on the home screen, and then navigate through form categories, or search for forms based on a form number, name, or description.

#### **Eco-Settings**

Icon	Description
	The application lets you easily manage energy consumption, noise, toner, and paper usage settings to help reduce the environmental impact of your printer.

#### Showroom



#### **Remote Operator Panel**

This application shows the printer control panel on your computer screen and lets you interact with the printer control panel, even when you are not physically near the printer. From your computer screen, you can view the printer status, release held print jobs, create bookmarks, and do other print-related tasks you might normally do while standing at the printer.

To activate Remote Operator Panel, do the following:

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click Settings > Device Solutions > Solutions (eSF) > Remote Operator Panel.
- 2 Select the **Enabled** check box, and then customize the settings.
- 3 Click Apply.

To use Remote Operator Panel, from the Embedded Web Server, click **Applications > Remote Operator Panel > Launch VNC Applet**.

# **Exporting and importing a configuration using the Embedded Web Server**

You can export configuration settings into a text file that can then be imported and used to apply the settings to one or more additional printers.

#### **Exporting a configuration**

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings** or **Configuration**.
- 2 Click Device Solutions > Solutions (eSF), or click Embedded Solutions.
- **3** From Installed Solutions, click the name of the application you want to configure.
- 4 Click Configure > Export.
- 5 Follow the instructions on the computer screen to save the configuration file, and then enter a unique file name or use the default name.

Note: If a JVM Out of Memory error occurs, then repeat the export until the configuration file is saved.

### Importing a configuration

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings** or **Configuration**.
- 2 Click Device Solutions > Solutions (eSF), or click Embedded Solutions.
- **3** From Installed Solutions, click the name of the application you want to configure.
- 4 Click Configure > Import.
- **5** Browse to the saved configuration file, and then load or preview it.

Note: If a timeout occurs and a blank screen appears, then refresh the browser, and then click Apply.

## **Additional printer setup**

## **Installing internal options**



**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

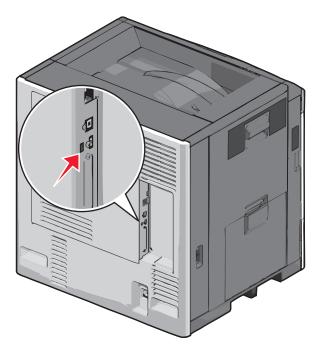
You can customize your printer connectivity and memory capacity by adding optional cards. The instructions in this section explain how to install the available cards; you can also use them to locate a card for removal.

#### **Available internal options**

- Memory cards
  - Printer memory
  - Flash memory
  - Fonts
- Firmware cards
  - Bar Code
  - PrintCryption<sup>TM</sup>
- Printer hard disk
- Lexmark<sup>TM</sup> Internal Solutions Ports (ISP)
  - RS-232-C Serial ISP
  - Parallel 1284-B ISP
  - MarkNet<sup>™</sup> N8250 802.11 b/g/n Wireless ISP
  - MarkNet N8130 10/100 Fiber ISP
  - MarkNet N8120 10/100/1000 Ethernet ISP

## Using the security lock feature

The printer is equipped with a security lock feature. When a lock compatible with most laptop computers is attached, the printer is locked. Once locked, the metal plate and the system board cannot be removed. Attach a security lock to the printer in the location shown.



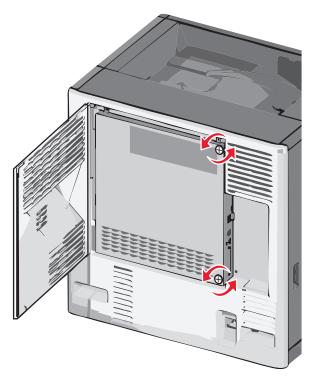
#### Accessing the system board



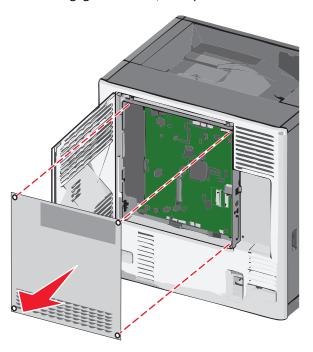
CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

- 1 Open the cover.
- **2** Remove the metal panel.
  - a Turn the screws on the panel counterclockwise to remove them.

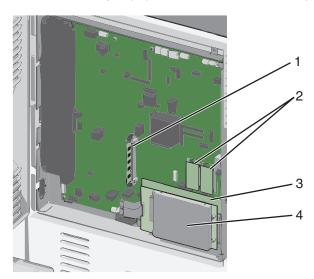


**b** Shift the metal panel to the left to disengage the hooks, then pull forward to remove it.



**3** Use the following illustration to locate the appropriate connectors.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

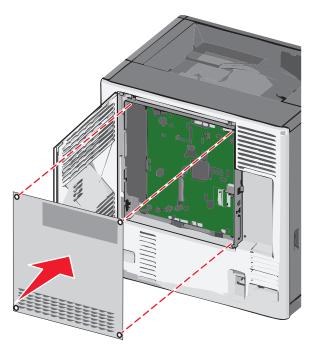


1	Memory card connector
2	Firmware and flash memory card connectors
3	Internal print server connector
4	Hard disk connector

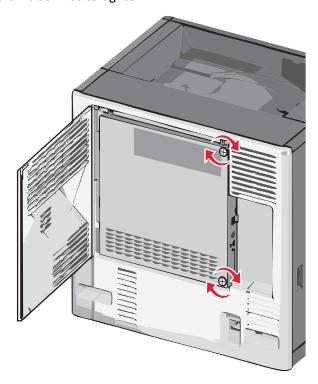
**4** Reattach the system board cover.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

**a** Reinstall the hooks on the left side of the metal panel into the slots on the system board cage, and then shift to the right.



**b** Align and then turn each screw clockwise to tighten.



**c** Close the cover.

#### Installing a memory card



**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

An optional memory card can be purchased separately and attached to the system board.

**1** Access the system board.

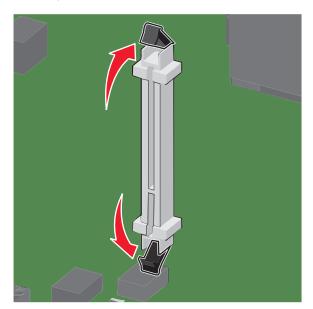
For more information, see "Accessing the system board" on page 23.

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

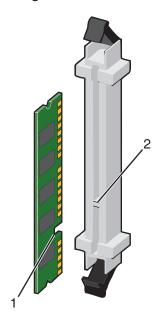
**2** Unpack the memory card.

Note: Avoid touching the connection points along the edge of the card.

**3** On the system board, open the memory card connector latches.

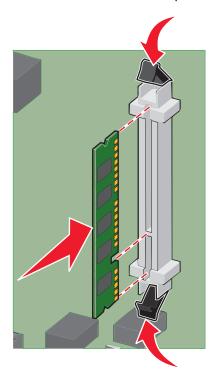


Align the notches on the memory card to the ridges on the connector.



1	Notch
2	Ridge

Push the memory card straight into the connector until it *clicks* into place.



Reattach the system board cover.

#### Installing a flash memory or firmware card

The system board has two connections for an optional flash memory or firmware card. Only one of each may be installed, but the connectors are interchangeable.



**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

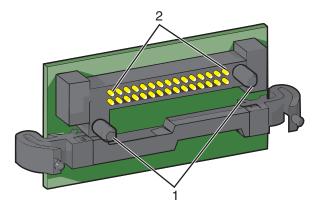
**1** Access the system board.

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

2 Unpack the card.

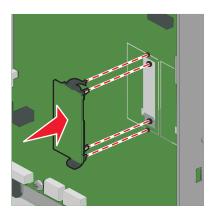
**Note:** Avoid touching the connection points along the edge of the card.

**3** Holding the card by its sides, align the plastic pins on the card with the holes on the system board.



1	Plastic pins
2	Metal pins

4 Push the card firmly into place.



#### Notes:

- The entire length of the connector on the card must touch and be flush against the system board.
- Be careful not to damage the connectors.
- **5** Reattach the system board cover.

#### **Installing an Internal Solutions Port**

The system board supports one optional Lexmark Internal Solutions Port (ISP).

**Note:** This task requires a flathead screwdriver.



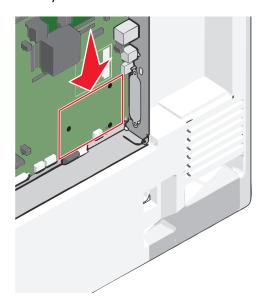
**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

- 1 Access the system board.
  For more information, see "Accessing the system board" on page 23.
- 2 Unpack the ISP and plastic tee.

Note: Avoid touching the components on the card.

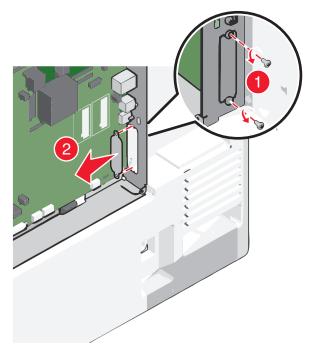
**3** Locate the appropriate connector on the system board.



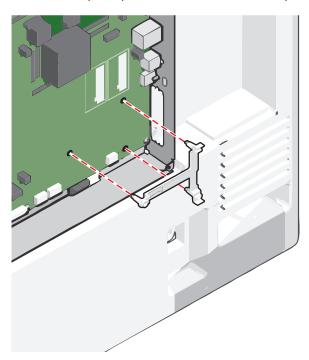
4 Remove the printer hard disk.

For more information, see "Removing a printer hard disk" on page 38.

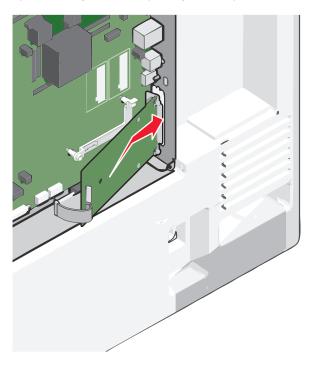
**5** Remove the metal cover from the ISP opening.



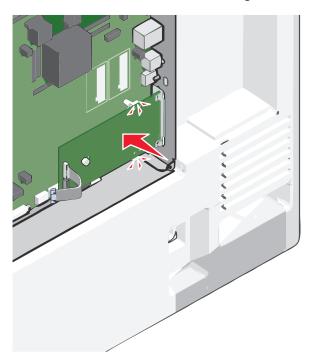
**6** Align the posts of the plastic tee to the holes on the system board, and press down until the tee *clicks* into place. Be sure each post of the tee has latched completely, and the tee is seated firmly on the system board.



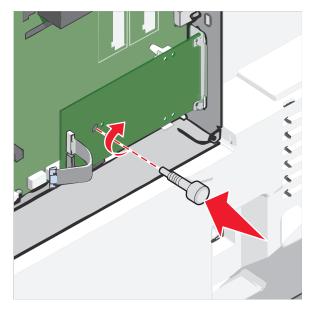
7 Install the ISP on the plastic tee. Angle the ISP over the plastic tee, and then slant it toward the plastic tee so that any overhanging connectors will pass through the ISP opening in the system board cage.



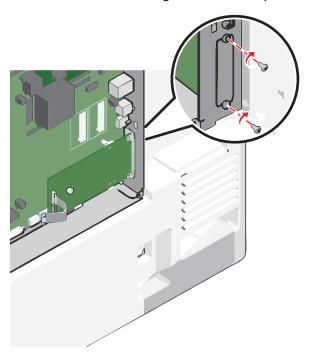
**8** Lower the ISP toward the plastic tee until the ISP is seated between the guides of the plastic tee.



Insert the long thumbscrew and turn it clockwise, enough to hold the ISP in place, but do not yet tighten the thumbscrew.



Attach the two provided screws to secure the ISP mounting bracket to the system board cage.

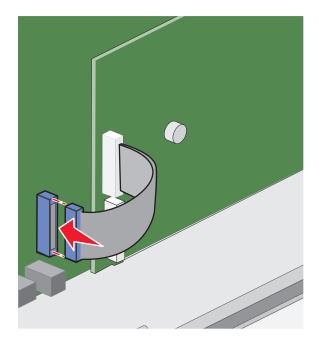


Tighten the long thumbscrew.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not overtighten the thumbscrew.

Insert the plug of the ISP interface cable into the receptacle of the system board.

**Note:** The plugs and receptacles are color-coded.



13 Reattach the system board cover.

#### Installing a printer hard disk

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

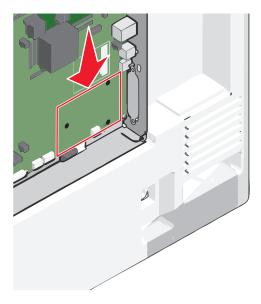


**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

- 1 Access the system board.
  For more information, see "Accessing the system board" on page 23.
- 2 Unpack the printer hard disk.

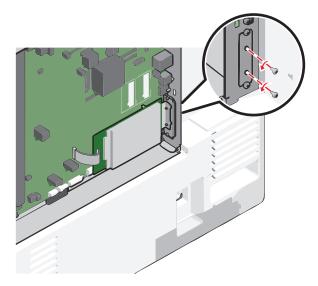
**3** Locate the appropriate connector on the system board.



**Note:** If an optional ISP is currently installed, then the printer hard disk must be installed onto the ISP.

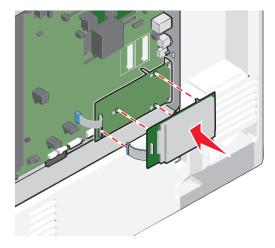
To install a printer hard disk onto the ISP:

**a** Using a flathead screwdriver, loosen the screws.



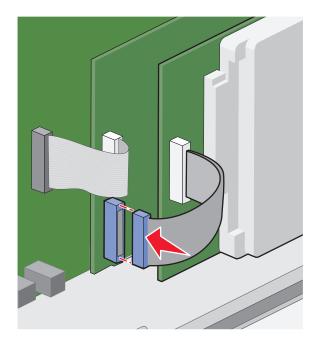
**b** Remove the screws attached to the printer hard disk mounting bracket, and then remove the bracket.

**c** Align the standoffs of the printer hard disk to the holes in the ISP, and then press down on the printer hard disk until the standoffs are in place.



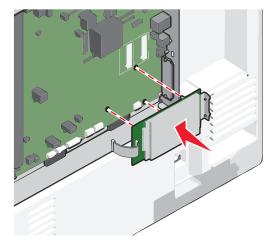
**d** Insert the plug of the printer hard disk interface cable into the receptacle of the ISP.

**Note:** The plugs and receptacles are color-coded.

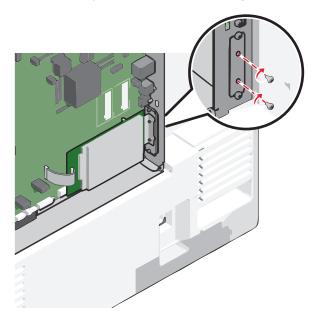


To install a printer hard disk directly on the system board:

**a** Align the standoffs of the printer hard disk to the holes in the system board, and then press down on the printer hard disk until the standoffs are in place.

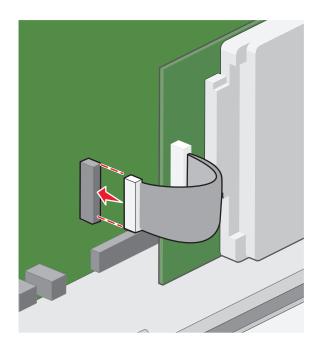


**b** Use the two provided screws to attach the printer hard disk mounting bracket.



**c** Insert the plug of the printer hard disk interface cable into the receptacle of the system board.

**Note:** The plugs and receptacles are color-coded.



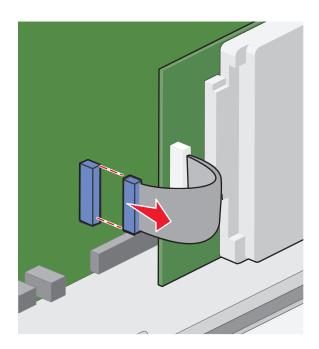
Reattach the system board cover.

### Removing a printer hard disk

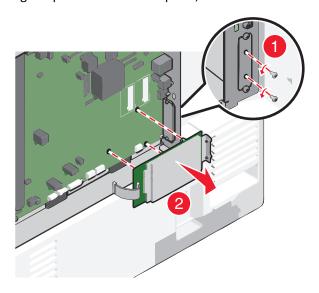
Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

- 1 Access the system board.
  For more information, see "Accessing the system board" on page 23.
- 2 Unplug the printer hard disk interface cable from the system board, leaving the cable attached to the printer hard disk. To unplug the cable, squeeze the paddle at the plug of the interface cable to disengage the latch before pulling the cable out.



**3** Remove the screws while holding the printer hard disk in place, and then remove the printer hard disk.



- 4 Set the printer hard disk aside.
- **5** Reattach the system board cover.

### Order of installation



**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.



**CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see **www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters**.



**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Install the printer and any options you have purchased in the following order:

- Caster base
- Optional spacer
- Optional 550-sheet trays or 2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder
- Standard 550-sheet trays
- Printer

For information on installing a caster base, a 550- or 2,000-sheet optional tray, spacer, or any of the finishers, see the setup documentation that came with the option.

### **Installing optional trays**

The printer supports the following optional input sources:

- 550-sheet tray
- 2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder



**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.



**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

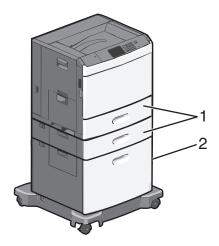


**CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, then you may need additional furniture. For more information, see **www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters**.

- **1** Unpack the optional tray, and then remove all packing material.
- **2** Place the tray near the printer.
- **3** Turn the printer off.

**4** Align the printer with the tray, and then lower the printer into place.

**Note:** Optional trays lock together when stacked. When necessary, remove stacked trays one at a time from the top down.



1	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)
2	Optional 550-sheet trays

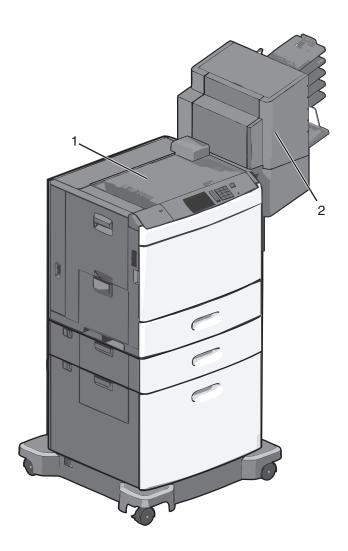
- **5** Turn the printer back on.
- **6** Set the printer software to recognize the optional input source.

For more information, see "Updating available options in the printer driver" on page 45.

# **Supported finishing features**

The printer supports the following finishing features:

- 500-Sheet Offset Stacker
- 500-Sheet Staple Finisher
- 500-Sheet Staple, Hole Punch Finisher
- 5-bin mailbox



1	Standard bin
2	Finisher bin

### **Standard bin**

- The paper capacity is 500 sheets.
- Finishing options are not supported in this bin.
- Envelopes are routed here.

### Finisher bin

- The paper capacity is 500 sheets.
- Envelopes, A5, A6 and statement paper sizes are not supported in this bin.

### **Finishing features**

Paper size	Two-hole punch	Three- or four-hole punch	5-bin mailbox	500-Sheet Staple Finisher
A4	✓	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>
A5	x	x	<b>✓</b>	x
Executive	✓	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>
Folio	✓	x	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>
JIS B5	✓	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>√</b>
Legal	✓	<b>✓</b>	<b>√</b>	<b>✓</b>
Letter	✓	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>√</b>
Statement	x	x	<b>√</b>	<b>✓</b>
Universal	x	x	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>
Envelopes (any size)	х	х	<b>✓</b>	х
Oficio	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	✓

# **Attaching cables**

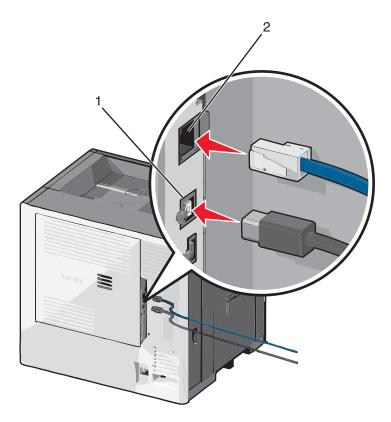


**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as a power cord, a fax feature, or USB cable, during a lightning storm.

Connect the printer to the computer using a USB cable or Ethernet cable.

Be sure to match the following:

- The USB symbol on the cable with the USB symbol on the printer
- The appropriate Ethernet cable to the Ethernet port



USB port
 Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the USB cable, any network adapter, or the printer in the area shown while actively printing. A loss of data or a malfunction can occur.
 Ethernet port

# Verifying printer setup

Once all hardware and software options are installed and the printer is turned on, verify that the printer is set up correctly by printing the following:

- Menu settings page—Use this page to verify that all printer options are installed correctly. A list of installed options appears toward the bottom of the page. If an option you installed is not listed, then it is not installed correctly. Remove the option and install it again.
- **Network setup page**—If your printer is a network model and is attached to a network, print a network setup page to verify the network connection. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

### Printing a menu settings page

From the home screen, navigate to:

> Reports > Menu Settings Page

### Printing a network setup page

If the printer is attached to a network, then print a network setup page to verify the network connection. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

- **1** From the home screen, navigate to:
  - > Reports > Network Setup Page
- 2 Check the first section of the network setup page, and confirm that the status is Connected.

If the status is **Not Connected**, then the LAN drop may not be active, or the network cable may be malfunctioning. Consult a system support person for a solution, and then print another network setup page.

### Setting up the printer software

### Installing the printer software

**Note:** If you installed the printer software on this computer before but need to reinstall the software, then uninstall the current software first.

#### For Windows users

- 1 Close all open software programs.
- 2 Insert the installation software CD.

If the installation dialog screen does not appear after a minute, then launch the CD manually:

- a Click **5**, or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
- **b** In the Start Search or Run box, type D:\setup.exe, where D is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.
- c Press Enter, or click OK.
- **3** Click **Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

#### For Macintosh users

- **1** Close all open applications.
- 2 Insert the installation software CD.

If the installation dialog does not appear after a minute, then click the CD icon on the desktop.

**3** Double-click the software installer package, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

#### Using the Internet

- 1 Go to the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com.
- 2 Navigate to:

**SUPPORT & DOWNLOADS** > select your printer > select your operating system

**3** Download the driver and install the printer software.

**Note:** Updated printer software may be available at **http://support.lexmark.com**.

### Updating available options in the printer driver

Once the printer software and any options are installed, it may be necessary to manually add the options in the printer driver to make them available for print jobs.

#### For Windows users

- **1** Open the printers folder:
  - a Click , or click Start and then click Run.
  - **b** In the Start Search or Run box, type control printers.
  - c Press Enter, or click OK.
- **2** Select the printer.
- 3 Right-click the printer, and then select **Properties**.
- 4 Click the Configuration tab.
- 5 Click **Update Now Ask Printer** or manually add any installed hardware options under Configuration Options.
- 6 Click Apply.

#### For Macintosh users

#### In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:

System Preferences > Print & Fax > select your printer > Options & Supplies > Driver

2 Add any installed hardware options, and then click **OK**.

#### In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

1 From the Finder, navigate to:

Go > Applications > Utilities

- 2 Double-click Printer Setup Utility or Print Center.
- **3** Select your printer.
- 4 From the Printers menu, choose **Show Info**.
- **5** Add any installed hardware options, and then click **Apply Changes**.

# Setting up wireless printing

**Note:** A Service Set Identifier (SSID) is a name assigned to a wireless network. Wireless Encryption Protocol (WEP) and Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) are types of security used on a network.

### Information you will need to set up the printer on a wireless network

Note: Do not connect the installation or network cables until prompted to do so by the setup software.

- **SSID**—The SSID is also referred to as the network name.
- Wireless Mode (or Network Mode)—The mode will be either infrastructure or ad hoc.
- Channel (for ad hoc networks)—The channel defaults to auto for infrastructure networks.

Some ad hoc networks will also require the auto setting. Check with your system support person if you are not sure which channel to select.

- Security Method—There are three basic options for Security Method:
  - WEP key

If your network uses more than one WEP key, enter up to four in the provided spaces. Select the key currently in use on the network by selecting the Default WEP Transmit Key.

- WPA or WPA2 passphrase

WPA includes encryption as an additional layer of security. The choices are AES or TKIP. Encryption must be set for the same type on the router and on the printer, or the printer will not be able to communicate on the network.

No security

If your wireless network does not use any type of security, then you will not have any security information.

Note: Using an unsecured wireless network is not recommended.

If you are installing the printer on an 802.1X network using the Advanced method, then you may need the following:

- Authentication type
- Inner authentication type
- 802.1X username and password
- Certificates

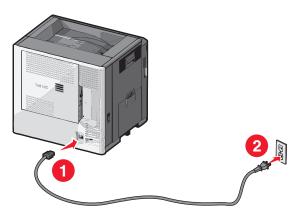
**Note:** For more information on configuring 802.1X security, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software and Documentation* CD.

### Installing the printer on a wireless network (Windows)

Before installing the printer on a wireless network, make sure:

- Your wireless network is set up and working properly.
- The computer you are using is connected to the same wireless network where you want to set up the printer.

1 Connect the power cable to the printer and then to a properly grounded electrical outlet, and then turn the printer on.







Make sure the printer and computer are fully on and ready.



Do not connect the USB cable until instructed to do so on the computer screen.

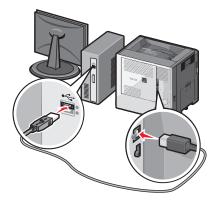
**2** Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD.



- **3** Click **Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.
- **4** Select **Wireless connection** when asked to choose a connection type.
- **5** From the Wireless Configuration dialog, select **Guided Setup (Recommended)**.

**Note:** Choose **Advanced Setup** only if you want to customize your installation.

**6** Temporarily connect a USB cable between the computer on the wireless network and the printer.



**Note:** After the printer is configured, the software will instruct you to disconnect the temporary USB cable so you can print wirelessly.

**7** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

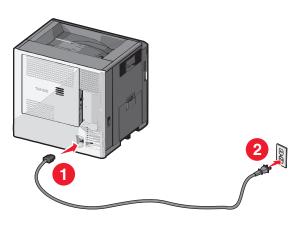
**Note:** For more information on allowing other computers on the network to use the wireless printer, see the *Networking Guide*.

### Installing the printer on a wireless network (Macintosh)

Make sure to disconnect the Ethernet cable when installing the printer on a wireless network.

### Prepare to configure the printer

1 Connect the power cable to the printer and then to a properly grounded electrical outlet, and then turn the printer on.





- 2 Locate the printer MAC address.
  - **a** From the home screen, navigate to:
    - > Reports > Network Setup Page
  - **b** In the Standard Network Card section, look for **UAA** (MAC).

Note: You will need this information later.

### **Enter the printer information**

**1** Access the AirPort options:

#### In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

From the Apple menu, navigate to:

System Preferences > Network > AirPort

#### In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

From the Finder, navigate to:

**Applications > Internet Connect > AirPort** 

- 2 From the Network Name pop-up menu, select **print server [yyyyyy]**, where the **y**'s are the last six digits of the MAC address located on the MAC address sheet.
- **3** Open a Web browser.
- 4 From the Bookmarks menu, select **Show** or **Show All Bookmarks**.
- 5 Under COLLECTIONS, select **Bonjour** or **Rendezvous**, and then double-click the printer name.

Note: The application referred to as Rendezvous in Mac OS X version 10.2 is now called Bonjour by Apple Inc.

**6** From the Embedded Web Server, navigate to where the wireless settings information are stored.

### Configure the printer for wireless access

- 1 Type the network name (SSID) in the appropriate field.
- 2 Select Infrastructure as your Network Mode setting if you are using an access point (wireless router).
- **3** Select the type of security you want to use to protect your wireless network.
- **4** Enter the security information necessary for the printer to connect to the wireless network.
- 5 Click Submit.
- **6** Open the AirPort application on your computer:

#### In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

From the Apple menu, navigate to:

System Preferences > Network > AirPort

#### In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

From the Finder, navigate to:

**Applications > Internet Connect > AirPort** 

**7** From the Network pop-up menu, select the name of your wireless network.

### Configure your computer to use the printer wirelessly

To print on a network printer, each Macintosh user must install a custom printer driver file and create a print queue in the Printer Setup Utility or Print Center.

- 1 Install a printer driver file on the computer:
  - a Insert the Software and Documentation CD, and then double-click the installer package for the printer.
  - **b** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
  - **c** Select a destination, and then click **Continue**.
  - **d** From the Easy Install screen, click **Install**.
  - **e** Type the user password, and then click **OK**. All necessary applications are installed in the computer.
  - **f** Click **Close** when installation is complete.
- **2** Add the printer:
  - a For IP printing:

#### In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

- 1 From the Apple menu, navigate to: System Preferences > Print & Fax
- 2 Click +, and then click the IP tab.
- **3** Type the IP address of the printer in the address field, and then click **Add**.

#### In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

**1** From the Finder, navigate to:

**Applications > Utilities** 

- 2 Double-click Printer Setup Utility or Print Center.
- **3** From the Printer List, choose **Add**, and then click **IP Printer**.
- 4 Type the IP address of the printer in the address field, and then click Add.
- **b** For AppleTalk printing:

**Note:** Make sure AppleTalk is activated on your printer.

#### In Mac OS X version 10.5

1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:

System Preferences > Print & Fax

**2** Click +, and then navigate to:

AppleTalk > select the printer from the list > Add

#### In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

**1** From the Finder, navigate to:

**Applications > Utilities** 

- 2 Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
- 3 From the Printer List, click Add.
- 4 Click **Default Browser** tab > **More Printers**.
- **5** From the first pop-up menu, select **AppleTalk**.

- 6 From the second pop-up menu, select Local AppleTalk Zone.
- 7 Select the printer from the list, and then click **Add**.

# Installing the printer on a wired network

These instructions apply to Ethernet and fiber optic network connections.

**Note:** Make sure you have completed the initial setup of the printer.

### For Windows users

**1** Insert the Software and Documentation CD.

If the installation screen does not appear after a minute, then launch the CD manually:

- a Click 0, or click Start and then click Run.
- **b** In the Start Search or Run box, type D:\setup.exe, where D is the letter of the CD or DVD drive.
- c Press Enter, or click OK.
- **2** Click **Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

**Note:** To configure the printer using a static IP address, IPv6, or scripts, select **Advanced Options** > **Administrator Tools**.

- 3 Select Ethernet connection, and then click Continue.
- 4 Attach the appropriate cable to the computer and to the printer when instructed to do so.
- **5** Select the printer from the list, and then click **Continue**.

Note: If the configured printer does not appear on the list, then click Modify Search.

**6** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

#### For Macintosh users

- 1 Allow the network DHCP server to assign an IP address to the printer.
- **2** Obtain the printer IP address. You can:
  - **a** View the information on the printer control panel home screen, or in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
  - **b** Print a network setup page or menu settings page and locate the information in the TCP/IP section.

**Note:** You will need the IP address if you are configuring access for computers on a different subnet than the printer.

- **3** Install the printer drivers, and then add the printer.
  - **a** Install a printer driver file on the computer:
    - **1** Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD, and then double-click the installer package for the printer.
    - **2** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
    - **3** Select a destination, and then click **Continue**.
    - 4 From the Easy Install screen, click Install.

- **5** Type the user password, and then click **OK**. All the necessary applications are installed in the computer.
- **6** Click **Close** when installation is complete.
- **b** Add the printer:
  - For IP printing:

#### In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

- **1** From the Apple menu, navigate to:
  - System Preferences > Print & Fax
- 2 Click +, and then click the IP tab.
- **3** Type the printer IP address in the address field, and then click **Add**.

#### In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

- **1** From the Finder, navigate to:
  - **Applications > Utilities**
- 2 Double-click Printer Setup Utility or Print Center.
- **3** From the Printer List, click **Add**, and then click **IP Printer**.
- 4 Type in the printer IP address in the address field, and then click Add.
- For AppleTalk printing:

**Note:** Make sure AppleTalk is activated on your printer.

### In Mac OS X version 10.5

- 1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:
  - **System Preferences > Print & Fax**
- 2 Click +, and then navigate to:

AppleTalk > select the printer from the list > Add

#### In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

- **1** From the Finder, navigate to:
  - **Applications > Utilities**
- 2 Double-click Printer Setup Utility or Print Center.
- **3** From the Printer List, click **Add**.
- 4 Click **Default Browser** tab > **More Printers**.
- **5** From the first pop-up menu, select **AppleTalk**.
- **6** From the second pop-up menu, select **Local AppleTalk Zone**.
- **7** Select the printer from the list, and then click **Add**.

**Note:** If the printer does not show up in the list, then you may need to add it using the IP address. For more information, contact your system support person.

# Changing port settings after installing a new network Internal Solutions Port

When a new Lexmark Internal Solutions Port (ISP) is installed in the printer, the printer configurations on computers that access the printer must be updated since the printer will be assigned a new IP address. All computers that access the printer must be updated with this new IP address.

#### Notes:

- If the printer has a static IP address, then you do not need to make any changes to the computer configurations.
- If the computers are configured to use network name that will stay the same, instead of by IP address, then you do not need to make any changes to your computer configurations.
- If you are adding a wireless ISP to a printer previously configured for a wired connection, then make sure the wired network is disconnected when you configure the printer to operate wirelessly. If the wired connection remains connected, then the wireless configuration will complete, but the wireless ISP will not be active. In the event that the printer was configured for a wireless ISP while still attached to a wired connection, disconnect the wired connection, turn the printer off, and then turn the printer back on again. This will enable the wireless ISP.
- Only one network connection at a time is active. If you want to switch the connection type between wired and wireless, you must first turn the printer off, connect the cable (to switch to a wired connection) or disconnect the cable (to switch to a wireless connection), and then turn the printer on.

### For Windows users

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- 2 Click 5, or click Start and then click Run.
- 3 In the Start Search or Run box, type control printers.
- 4 Press Enter, or click OK.

The printer folder opens.

**5** Locate the printer that has changed.

Note: If there is more than one copy of the printer, then update all of them with the new IP address.

- **6** Right-click the printer.
- 7 Click Properties > Ports tab.
- **8** Select the port from the list, and then click **Configure Port**.
- **9** Type the new IP address in the "Printer Name or IP Address" field.
- 10 Click OK > Close.

#### For Macintosh users

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

**Note:** You will need the IP address if you are configuring access for computers on a different subnet than the printer.

### 2 Add the printer:

• For IP printing:

#### In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

- **a** From the Apple menu, navigate to:
  - System Preferences > Print & Fax
- **b** Click +, and then click the **IP** tab.
- c Type the IP address of your printer in the Address field, and then click Add.

#### In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

**a** From the Finder, navigate to:

**Applications > Utilities** 

- **b** Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
- **c** From the Printer List, click **Add**, and then click **IP Printer**.
- **d** Type the IP address of your printer in the Address field, and then click **Add**.
- For AppleTalk printing:

**Note:** Make sure AppleTalk is activated on your printer.

#### In Mac OS X version 10.5

a From the Apple menu, navigate to:

**System Preferences > Print & Fax** 

**b** Click +, and then navigate to:

AppleTalk > select the printer from the list > Add

#### In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

**a** From the Finder, navigate to:

**Applications > Utilities** 

- **b** Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
- **c** From the Printer List, click **Add**.
- d Click the **Default Browser** tab > **More Printers**.
- **e** From the first pop-up menu, select **AppleTalk**.
- **f** From the second pop-up menu, select **Local AppleTalk Zone**.
- g Select the printer from the list, and then click Add.

### Setting up serial printing

In serial printing, data is transferred one bit at a time. Although serial printing is usually slower than parallel printing, it is the preferred option when there is a great deal of distance between the printer and computer or when an interface with a better transfer rate is not available.

After installing the serial or communication (COM) port, configure the printer and the computer so they can communicate. Make sure you have connected the serial cable to the COM port on your printer.

- **1** Set the parameters in the printer:
  - **a** From the printer control panel, navigate to the menu with port settings.
  - **b** Locate the menu with serial port settings.
  - **c** Make any necessary changes to the serial settings.
  - **d** Save the new settings, and then print a menu settings page.
- **2** Install the printer driver:
  - **a** Insert the Software and Documentation CD.

If the installation screen does not appear after a minute, then launch the CD manually::

- 1 Click 5, or click Start and then click Run.
- 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type D:\setup.exe, where D is the letter of the CD or DVD drive.
- 3 Press Enter, or click OK.
- **b** Click **Advanced Options** > **Custom Install**.
- **c** Follow the instructions on the computer screen
- **d** From the Configure Printer Connection dialog, select **Connect through a port discovered on your computer**, and then select a port.
- **e** If the port is not in the list, then click **Refresh**.

or

Navigate to:

Add port > select a port type > enter necessary information > OK

- f Click Continue.
  - 1 If you want to add another printer, then click **Add Another**.
  - 2 If you want to make changes, then select a printer, and then click Edit.
  - **3** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
- g Click Finish.
- **3** Set the COM port parameters:

After installing the printer driver, set the serial parameters in the COM port assigned to the printer driver.

Note: Make sure the serial parameters in the COM port match the serial parameters you set in the printer.

- a Open the Device Manager.
  - 1 Click , or click Start and then click Run.
  - 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type devmgmt.msc.
  - **3** Press Enter, or click **OK**.
- **b** Look for Ports, and then click + to expand the list of available ports.
- c Right-click the COM port where you attached the serial cable to your computer (example: COM1).
- d Click Properties.
- **e** On the Port Settings tab, set the serial parameters to the same serial parameters in the printer. Check the serial heading of the menu settings page for the printer settings.
- **f** Click **OK**, and then close all the windows.
- **g** Print a test page to verify printer installation.

# Minimizing your printer's environmental impact

Lexmark is committed to environmental sustainability and is continually improving its printers to reduce their impact on the environment. We design with the environment in mind, engineer our packaging to reduce materials, and provide collection and recycling programs. For more information, see:

- The Notices chapter
- The Environmental Sustainability section of the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com/environment
- The Lexmark recycling program at www.lexmark.com/recycle

By selecting certain printer settings or tasks, you may be able to reduce your printer's impact even further. This chapter outlines the settings and tasks that may yield a greater environmental benefit.

### Saving paper and toner

Studies show that as much as 80% of the carbon footprint of a printer is related to paper usage. You can significantly reduce your carbon footprint by using recycled paper and the following printing suggestions, such as printing on both sides of the paper and printing multiple pages on one side of a sheet of paper.

For information on how you can quickly save paper and energy using one printer setting, see "Using Eco-Mode" on page 57.

### Using recycled paper

As an environmentally conscious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled office paper produced specifically for use in laser printers. For more information on recycled papers that work well with your printer, see "Using recycled paper and other office papers" on page 74.

### **Conserving supplies**

### Use both sides of the paper

If your printer model supports duplex printing, you can control whether print appears on one or two sides of the paper by selecting **2-sided printing** from the Print dialog or from the Lexmark Toolbar.

### Place multiple pages on one sheet of paper

You can print up to 16 consecutive pages of a multiple-page document onto one side of a single sheet of paper by selecting a setting from the Multipage printing (N-Up) section of the Print dialog screen.

### Check your first draft for accuracy

Before printing or making multiple copies of a document:

- Use the preview feature, which you can select from the Print dialog or from the Lexmark Toolbar to see how the document will look like before you print it.
- Print one copy of the document to check its content and format for accuracy.

### Avoid paper jams

Correctly set the paper type and size to avoid paper jams. For more information, see "Avoiding jams" on page 163.

#### Print in black and white

To print all text and graphics using only the black print cartridge, set the printer to Black Only. For more information, see "Printing in black and white" on page 78.

# Saving energy

### **Using Eco-Mode**

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- 2 Click Settings > General Settings > Eco-Mode > select a setting > Submit.

Choose	То	
Off	Use factory default settings for all settings associated with Eco-Mode. This setting supports the performance specifications of your printer.	
Energy	Reduce energy use, especially when the printer is idle.	
	The printer enters Sleep mode after one minute of inactivity.	
	When the printer enters Sleep mode, the printer control panel display is turned off.	
Energy/Pape	Use all the settings associated with Energy mode and Paper mode.	
Paper	Enable the automatic duplex feature.	
	Turn off print log features.	

### **Reducing printer noise**

To select a Quiet Mode setting using the Embedded Web Server:

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- 2 Click Settings > General Settings > Quiet Mode > select a setting > Submit

Choose	То		
Off	Use factory default settings. This setting supports the performance specifications of your printer.		
<b>Note:</b> Selecting <b>Photo</b> from the driver may disable Quiet Mode.			
On	Reduce printer noise.		
	Print jobs will process at reduced speed.		
	Fans run at reduced speed or are turned off.		
	<ul> <li>If your printer has faxing capability, fax sounds are reduced or disabled, including those made by the fax speaker and ringer. The fax is placed in standby mode.</li> </ul>		
	The alarm control and cartridge alarm sounds are turned off.		

### **Adjusting Sleep Mode**

To save energy, you can decrease the number of minutes before the printer enters Sleep Mode.

Available settings range from 1–240 minutes. The factory default setting is 30 minutes.

### **Using the Embedded Web Server**

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- 2 Click Settings > General Settings > Timeouts.
- 3 In the Sleep Mode field, enter the number of minutes you want the printer to wait before it enters Sleep Mode.
- 4 Click Submit.

### Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:
  - > Settings > General Settings > Timeouts > Sleep Mode
- 2 In the Sleep Mode field, select the number of minutes you want the printer to wait before it enters Sleep Mode.
- **3** Touch ✓.

### **Using Hibernate Mode**

Hibernate is an ultra-low power operating mode. When operating in Hibernate mode, all other systems and devices are powered down safely.

#### **Using the Embedded Web Server**

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- 2 Click Settings > General Settings > Sleep Button Settings.
- 3 From the Press Sleep Button or Press and Hold Sleep Button drop-down, select Hibernate.
- 4 Click Submit.

### Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:
  - > Settings > General Settings > Press Sleep Button or Press and Hold Sleep Button > Hibernate
- **2** Touch ✓.

### Adjusting the brightness of the display

To save energy, or if you are have trouble reading your display, adjust the brightness of the display.

Available settings range from 20–100. The factory default setting is 100.

### **Using the Embedded Web Server**

**1** Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- 2 Click Settings > General Settings.
- 3 In the Screen Brightness field, enter the brightness percentage you want for the display.
- 4 Click Submit.

#### Using the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:
  - > Settings > General Settings
- 2 Touch the down arrow until Screen Brightness appears, and then select a setting.
- **3** Touch ✓.

### Recycling

Lexmark provides collection programs and environmentally progressive approaches to recycling. For more information, see:

- The Notices chapter
- The Environmental Sustainability section of the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com/environment
- The Lexmark recycling program at www.lexmark.com/recycle

### **Recycling Lexmark products**

To return Lexmark products for recycling:

- 1 Visit our Web site at www.lexmark.com/recycle.
- 2 Find the product type you want to recycle, and then select your country or region from the list.
- **3** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

**Note:** Printer supplies and hardware not listed in a Lexmark collection program may be recycled through your local recycling center. Contact your local recycling center to determine the items they accept.

### **Recycling Lexmark packaging**

Lexmark continually strives to minimize packaging. Less packaging helps to ensure that Lexmark printers are transported in the most efficient and environmentally sensitive manner and that there is less packaging to dispose of. These efficiencies result in fewer greenhouse emissions, energy savings, and natural resource savings.

Lexmark cartons are 100% recyclable where corrugated recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

The foam used in Lexmark packaging is recyclable where foam recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

When you return a cartridge to Lexmark, you can reuse the box that the cartridge came in. Lexmark will recycle the box.

### Returning Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling

The Lexmark Cartridge Collection Program diverts millions of Lexmark cartridges from landfills annually by making it both easy and free for Lexmark customers to return used cartridges to Lexmark for reuse or recycling. One hundred percent of the empty cartridges returned to Lexmark are either reused or demanufactured for recycling. Boxes used to return the cartridges are also recycled.

To return Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling, follow the instructions that came with your printer or cartridge and use the pre-paid shipping label. You can also:

- 1 Visit our Web site at www.lexmark.com/recycle.
- 2 From the Toner Cartridges section, select your country from the list.
- **3** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

# Loading paper and specialty media

This section explains how to load the 550-sheet tray, an optional 2,000-sheet tray, a multipurpose feeder, and an optional 550-sheet specialty media drawer. It also includes information about paper orientation, setting the Paper Size and Paper Type, and linking and unlinking trays.

# Setting the paper size and type

The Paper Size setting is automatically sensed according to the position of the paper guides in each tray except the multipurpose feeder. The Paper Size setting for the multipurpose feeder must be set manually from the Paper Size menu. The Paper Type setting must be set manually for all trays that do not contain plain paper.

From the home screen navigate to:

► Paper Menu > Paper Size/Type > select a tray > select the paper size or type >

The factory default Paper Type setting is Plain Paper.

### **Configuring Universal paper settings**

The Universal Paper Size is a user-defined setting that lets you print on paper sizes that are not preset in the printer menus. Set the Paper Size for the specified tray to Universal when the size you want is not available from the Paper Size menu. Then, specify all of the following Universal size settings for your paper:

- Units of Measure
- Portrait Width
- Portrait Height

#### Notes:

- The largest supported Universal size is 216 x 1219 mm (8.5 x 48 in.).
- The smallest supported Universal size is 76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) and loaded in the multipurpose feeder only.

From the home screen, navigate to:

► Paper Menu > Universal Setup > Units of Measure > select unit of measure > Portrait Width or Portrait Height > select width or height > ✓

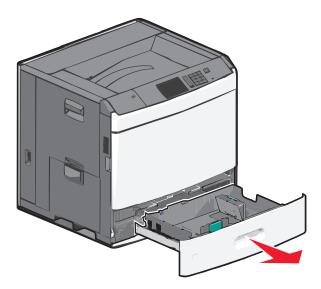
# Loading the standard or optional 550-sheet tray

The printer has one standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1), and may have one or more optional 550-sheet trays. All 550-sheet trays support the same paper sizes and types.

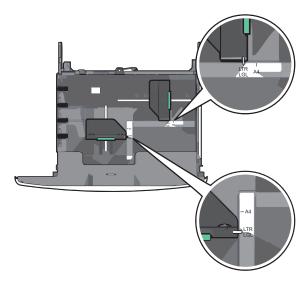
 $\wedge$ 

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each paper drawer or tray separately. Keep all other drawers or trays closed until needed.

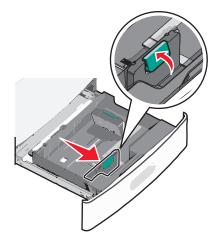
**1** Pull the tray out.



Notice the size indicators on the bottom of the tray. Use these indicators to help position the length and width guides.

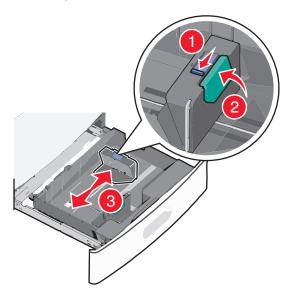


2 Squeeze and then slide the width guide to the correct position for the paper size you are loading.

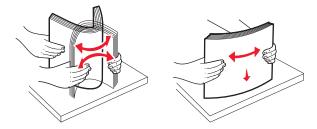


3 Squeeze and then slide the length guide to the correct position for the paper size you are loading.

**Note:** The length guide has a locking device. To unlock, push the button on top of the length guide backward. To lock, push the button forward when a length has been selected.



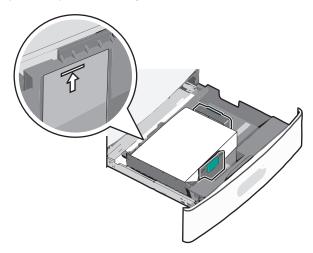
**4** Flex the sheets back and forth to loosen them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



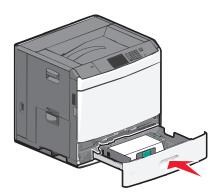
**5** Load the paper stack with the recommended print side faceup.

#### Notes:

- Place the print side facedown for duplex printing.
- Place pre-punched paper with the holes toward the front of the tray.
- Place letterheads faceup with the header on the left side of the tray.
- Place letterheads facedown with the header on the right side of the tray for duplex printing.
- Make sure the paper is below the maximum fill line located on the edge of the paper tray. Overloading the tray can cause paper jams and possible printer damage.



**6** Insert the tray.



7 From the printer control panel, verify the Paper Size and Paper Type for the tray based on the paper you loaded.

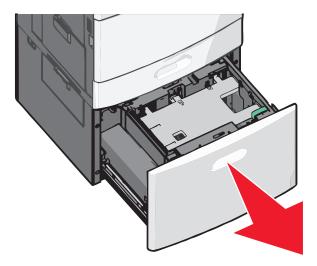
# Loading the 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder

The high-capacity feeder can hold up to 2,000 sheets of A4-, letter-, or legal-size paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb).

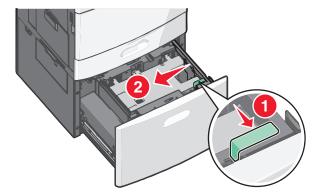


**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each paper drawer or tray separately. Keep all other drawers or trays closed until needed.

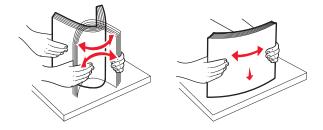
**1** Pull the tray out.



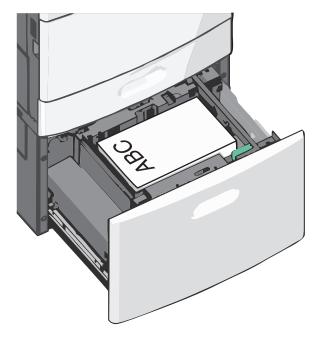
2 Adjust the width guide as necessary.



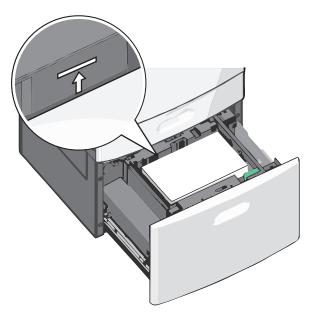
**3** Flex the sheets back and forth to loosen them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



4 Load paper into the tray with the print side faceup.



**Note:** Make sure the paper is below the maximum fill line located on the edge of the paper tray. Overloading the tray can cause paper jams.



#### Notes:

- Place pre-punched paper with the holes toward the front of the tray.
- Place letterheads faceup with the header on the left side of the tray.
- Place letterheads facedown with the header on the right side of the tray for duplex printing.
- **5** Insert the tray.

# Loading the multipurpose feeder

The multipurpose feeder can hold several sizes and types of print media, such as transparencies, labels, card stock, and envelopes. It can be used for single-page or manual printing, or as an additional tray.

The multipurpose feeder can hold approximately:

- 100 sheets of 75-g/m<sup>2</sup> (20-lb) paper
- 10 envelopes
- 75 transparencies

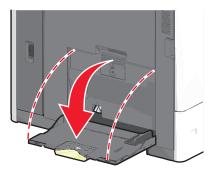
The multipurpose feeder accepts paper or specialty media within the following dimensions:

- Width—89 mm (3.5 in.) to 229 mm (9.02 in.)
- Length—127 mm (5 in.) to 1270 mm (50 in.)

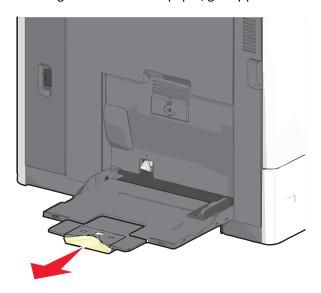
Note: Maximum width and length can be applied only to short-edge feeding.

**Note:** Do not add or remove paper or specialty media when the printer is printing from the multipurpose feeder or when the printer control panel indicator light is blinking. Doing so may cause a jam.

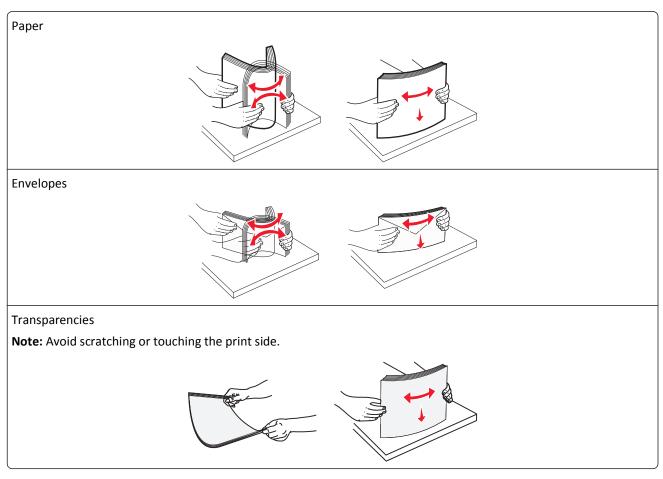
1 Pull down the multipurpose feeder door.



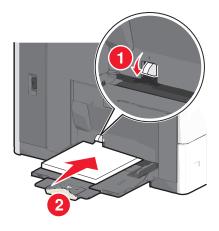
2 For paper or specialty media that is longer than letter-size paper, gently pull the extension until it is fully extended.



**3** Flex the sheets of paper or specialty media back and forth to loosen them. Do not fold or crease them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



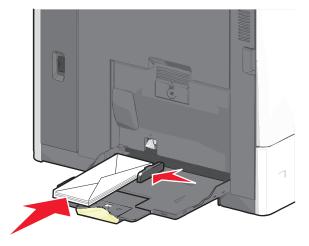
**4** Push the paper pick tab, and then load the paper or specialty media. Slide the stack gently into the multipurpose feeder until it comes to a stop, and then release the paper pick tab.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Pulling the paper out, without pushing the paper pick tab first, may cause jams or the paper pick tab to break.

- Load paper and transparencies with the recommended print side facedown and the short edge entering the printer first.
- For duplex letterhead printing, place the letterhead faceup and the header entering the printer last.

• Load envelopes with the flap side up and to the right.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Never use envelopes with stamps, clasps, snaps, windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These envelopes may severely damage the printer.

#### Notes:

- Do not exceed the maximum stack height by forcing paper or transparencies under the stack height limiter.
- Load only one size and type of paper at a time.
- **5** Adjust the width guide to lightly touch the edge of the stack. Make sure the paper or specialty media fits loosely in the multipurpose feeder, lies flat, and is not bent or wrinkled.



**6** From the printer control panel, set the Paper Size and Paper Type for the multipurpose feeder (MP Feeder Size and MP Feeder Type) based on the paper or specialty media loaded.

# Linking and unlinking trays

### **Linking trays**

Tray linking is useful for large print jobs or for printing multiple copies. When one linked tray is empty, paper feeds from the next linked tray. When the Paper Size and Paper Type settings are the same for any trays, the trays are automatically linked. The Paper Size setting is automatically sensed according to the position of the paper guides in each tray except Tray 1 and the multipurpose feeder. The Paper Size setting for the multipurpose feeder must be set manually from the Paper Size menu. The Paper Type setting must be set for all trays from the Paper Type menu. The Paper Type menu and the Paper Size menu are both available from the Paper Size/Type menu.

### **Unlinking trays**

**Note:** Trays that do not have the same settings as any other tray are not linked.

Change one of the following tray settings:

Paper Type

Paper Type names describe the paper characteristics. If the name that best describes your paper is used by linked trays, assign a different Paper Type name to the tray, such as Custom Type [x], or define your own custom name.

Paper Size

Load a different paper size to automatically change the Paper Size setting for a tray. Paper Size settings for the multipurpose feeder are not automatic; they must be set manually from the Paper Size menu.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not assign a Paper Type name that does not accurately describe the type of paper loaded in a tray. The temperature of the fuser varies according to the specified Paper Type. Prints may not be properly processed if an inaccurate Paper Type is selected.

### Linking exit bins

Link exit bins to create a single output source. The printer automatically uses the next available bin as the output source.

The standard exit bin holds up to 550 sheets of 20-lb paper. If you need additional output capacity, you can purchase other optional exit bins.

**Note:** Not all exit bins support every paper size and type.

1 From the home screen, navigate to:

> Paper Menu > Bin Setup

2 Touch the bin or bins you want to link, and then touch Configure Bins > Link.

### Creating a custom name for a paper type

If the printer is on a network, you can use the Embedded Web Server to define a name other than Custom Type [x] for each of the custom paper types loaded into the printer.

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

**Note:** If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- 2 Click Settings > Paper Menu > Custom Name > type a name > Submit.

**Note:** This custom name will replace the Custom Type [x] name under the Custom Types and Paper Size and Type menus.

3 Click Custom Types > select a paper type > Submit.

### Assigning a custom paper type name

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:
  - > Paper Menu > Paper Size/Type
- 2 Select the tray number or MP Feeder Type.
- **3** Touch the left or right arrow until **Custom Type** [x] or another custom name appears.
- **4** Touch **⋖**.

### Configuring a custom name

If the printer is on a network, then you can use the Embedded Web Server to define a name other than Custom Type [x] for each of the custom paper types loaded into the printer.

1 Type the printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser.

**Note:** If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- 2 Click **Settings** > **Paper Menu** > **Custom Types** > select the custom name you want to configure > select a paper or specialty media type > **Submit**.

# Paper and specialty media guide

### **Paper guidelines**

### **Paper characteristics**

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. Consider these characteristics when evaluating new paper stock.

### Weight

The printer can automatically feed paper weights from 60 to 220 g/m $^2$  (16 to 58 lb bond) grain long. Paper lighter than 60 g/m $^2$  (16 lb) might not be stiff enough to feed properly, causing jams. For best performance, use 75-g/m $^2$  (20-lb bond) grain long paper. For paper smaller than 182 x 257 mm (7 x 10 in.), we recommend 90 g/m $^2$  (24 lb) or heavier paper.

Note: Duplex is supported only for 60-g/m<sup>2</sup>-120-g/m<sup>2</sup> (16-lb-32-lb bond) paper.

#### Curl

Curl is the tendency for paper to curl at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl can occur after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped in hot, humid, cold, or dry conditions, even in the trays, can contribute to paper curling prior to printing and can cause feeding problems.

#### **Smoothness**

Paper smoothness directly affects print quality. If paper is too rough, toner cannot fuse to it properly. If paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding or print quality issues. Always use paper between 100 and 300 Sheffield points; however, smoothness between 150 and 200 Sheffield points produces the best print quality.

#### Moisture content

The amount of moisture in paper affects both print quality and the ability of the printer to feed the paper correctly. Leave paper in its original wrapper until it is time to use it. This limits the exposure of paper to moisture changes that can degrade its performance.

Condition paper before printing by storing it in its original wrapper in the same environment as the printer for 24 to 48 hours before printing. Extend the time several days if the storage or transportation environment is very different from the printer environment. Thick paper may also require a longer conditioning period.

#### **Grain direction**

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either *grain long*, running the length of the paper, or *grain short*, running the width of the paper.

For 60- to 135-g/m $^2$  (16- to 36-lb bond) paper, grain long paper is recommended. For papers heavier than 135 g/m $^2$ , grain short is recommended.

#### Fiber content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100% chemically treated pulped wood. This content provides the paper with a high degree of stability resulting in fewer paper feeding problems and better print quality. Paper containing fibers such as cotton can negatively affect paper handling.

### Unacceptable paper

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated papers used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as carbonless papers, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper
- Preprinted papers with chemicals that may contaminate the printer
- Preprinted papers that can be affected by the temperature in the printer fuser
- Preprinted papers that require a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than ±2.3 mm (±0.9 in.), such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms

In some cases, registration can be adjusted with a software application to successfully print on these forms.

- Coated papers (erasable bond), synthetic papers, thermal papers
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface papers, or curled papers
- Recycled papers that fail EN12281:2002 (European)
- Paper weighing less than 60 g/m² (16 lb)
- Multiple-part forms or documents

### **Selecting paper**

Using appropriate paper prevents jams and helps ensure trouble-free printing.

To help avoid jams and poor print quality:

- Always use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading paper, know the recommended print side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, types, or weights in the same source; mixing results in jams.
- Do not use coated papers unless they are specifically designed for electrophotographic printing.

## Selecting preprinted forms and letterhead

Use these guidelines when selecting preprinted forms and letterhead:

- Use grain long for 60 to 90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 to 24 lb) weight paper.
- Use only forms and letterhead printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Avoid papers with rough or heavily textured surfaces.

Use papers printed with heat-resistant inks designed for use in xerographic copiers. The ink must be able to withstand temperatures up to 190°C (374°F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions. Use inks that are not affected by the resin in toner. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based generally meet these requirements; latex inks might not. When in doubt, contact the paper supplier.

Preprinted papers such as letterhead must be able to withstand temperatures up to 190°C (374°F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions.

### Using recycled paper and other office papers

As an environmentally conscious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled office paper produced specifically for use in laser (electrophotographic) printers. In 1998, Lexmark presented to the US government a study demonstrating that recycled paper produced by major mills in the US fed as well as non-recycled paper. However, no blanket statement can be made that *all* recycled paper will feed well.

Lexmark consistently tests its printers with recycled paper (20–100% post-consumer waste) and a variety of test paper from around the world, using chamber tests for different temperature and humidity conditions. Lexmark has found no reason to discourage the use of today's recycled office papers, but generally the following property guidelines apply to recycled paper.

- Low moisture content (4-5%)
- Suitable smoothness (100–200 Sheffield units, or 140–350 Bendtsen units, European)

**Note:** Some much smoother papers (such as premium 24 lb laser papers, 50–90 Sheffield units) and much rougher papers (such as premium cotton papers, 200–300 Sheffield units) have been engineered to work very well in laser printers, despite surface texture. Before using these types of paper, consult your paper supplier.

- Suitable sheet-to-sheet coefficient of friction (0.4-0.6)
- Sufficient bending resistance in the direction of feed

Recycled paper, paper of lower weight (<60 g/m<sup>2</sup> [16 lb bond]) and/or lower caliper (<3.8 mils [0.1 mm]), and paper that is cut grain-short for portrait (or short-edge) fed printers may have lower bending resistance than is required for reliable paper feeding. Before using these types of paper for laser (electrophotographic) printing, consult your paper supplier. Remember that these are general guidelines only and that paper meeting these guidelines may still cause paper feeding problems in any laser printer (for example, if the paper curls excessively under normal printing conditions).

## **Storing paper**

Use these paper storage guidelines to help avoid jams and uneven print quality:

- For best results, store paper where the temperature is 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40%. Most label manufacturers recommend printing in a temperature range of 18 to 24°C (65 to 75°F) with relative humidity between 40 and 60%.
- Store paper in cartons when possible, on a pallet or shelf, rather than on the floor.
- Store individual packages on a flat surface.
- Do not store anything on top of individual paper packages.

## Supported paper sizes, types, and weights

The following tables provide information on standard and optional paper input sources and the types of paper they support.

**Note:** To use a paper size that is unlisted, configure a Universal Paper Size.

For more information, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide* available on the Lexmark Web site at http://support.lexmark.com.

## Supported paper sizes

Measurements apply to simplex (one-sided) printing only. For duplex (two-sided) printing, the minimum size is  $139.7 \times 210 \text{ mm}$  (5.50 x 8.27 in.).

Paper size	Dimensions	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)	Optional 550-sheet tray	Optional 2,000-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder	Duplexer
A4	210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in.)	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>
A5	148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in.)	✓	<b>✓</b>	x	<b>√</b>	<b>✓</b>
A6	105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in.)	x	X	x	<b>✓</b>	X
JIS B5	182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.1 in.)	✓	✓	x	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>
Letter	215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in.)	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>
Legal	215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>
Executive	184.2 x 266.7 mm (7.25 x 10.5 in.)	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	x	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>
Oficio (México)	215.9 x 340.4 mm (8.5 x 13.4 in.)	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	x	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>
Folio	215.9 x 330.2 mm (8.5 x 13 in.)	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	х	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>
Statement	139.7 x 215.9 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in.)	✓	<b>✓</b>	х	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Supported by C792 models only.

 $<sup>^2</sup>$  This formats the envelope size setting for 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.) unless the size is specified by the software application.

Paper size	Dimensions	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)	Optional 550-sheet tray	Optional 2,000-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder	Duplexer
Universal Note: Turn size sensing off to support	148 x 210 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.)	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	x	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>
universal sizes that are close to standard media sizes.	76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)	x	x	х	✓	x
	76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) to 215.9 x 914.4 mm (8.5 x 36 in.) <sup>1</sup>	x	x	x	<b>✓</b>	x
	76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) to 215.9 x 1219.2 mm (8.5 x 48 in.) <sup>1</sup>	x	x	х	<b>√</b>	x
7 3/4 Envelope (Monarch)	98.4 x 190.5 mm (3.875 x 7.5 in.)	x	х	х	✓	x
9 Envelope	98.4 x 226.1 mm (3.875 x 8.9 in.)	x	х	х	✓	x
Com 10 Envelope	104.8 x 241.3 mm (4.12 x 9.5 in.)	х	х	х	<b>✓</b>	х
DL Envelope	110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 in.)	х	х	х	<b>✓</b>	х
C5 Envelope	162 x 229 mm (6.38 x 9.01 in.)	х	x	х	<b>✓</b>	х
B5 Envelope	176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 in.)	х	х	х	<b>✓</b>	х
Other Envelope <sup>2</sup>	85.7 x 165 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (3.375 x 6.50 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.)	x	x	х	✓	X

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Supported by C792 models only.

 $<sup>^2</sup>$  This formats the envelope size setting for 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.) unless the size is specified by the software application.

## Supported paper types and weights

The printer supports  $60-176 \text{ g/m}^2$  (16–47 lb) paper weights for one-sided printing. Two-sided printing is supported on  $64-176 \text{ g/m}^2$  (17–47 lb) paper weights.

Note: Labels, transparencies, envelopes, and card stock always print at reduced speed.

Paper type	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)	Optional 550-sheet tray	Optional 2,000-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder	Duplexer
Paper	<b>/</b>	/	/	<b>✓</b>	<b>/</b>
• Plain		,	,		
Recycled					
Glossy					
Heavy Glossy					
Bond					
Letterhead					
Preprinted					
Colored					
• Light					
Heavy					
Rough/Cotton					
Custom Type [x]					
Card stock	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>	x	✓	<b>✓</b>
Transparencies <sup>1, 2</sup>	x	х	х	<b>✓</b>	х
Labels <sup>3</sup>	/	<b>/</b>	х	<b>√</b>	1
Paper	<b>*</b>	<b>*</b>		•	•
• Vinyl					
Envelopes <sup>4</sup>	х	х	х	<b>✓</b>	х

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> This media is supported only in the multipurpose feeder.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Do not use inkjet or 3M CG3710 transparencies.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> Paper labels are supported. Other media such as vinyl may show print quality defects in some environments, and prolonged vinyl label usage may reduce fuser life. For more information, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide* available on the Lexmark Web site at http://support.lexmark.com.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> Use envelopes that lie flat when individually placed facedown on a table.

## **Printing**

This chapter covers printing, printer reports, and job cancelation. The selection and handling of paper and specialty media can affect how reliably documents print. For more information, see "Avoiding jams" on page 163 and "Storing paper" on page 74.

## **Printing a document**

### **Printing a document**

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, set the Paper Type and Paper Size to match the loaded paper.
- 2 Send the print job:

#### For Windows users

- a With a document open, click File > Print.
- **b** Click **Properties**, **Preferences**, **Options**, or **Setup**.
- c Adjust settings as necessary.
- d Click OK > Print.

#### For Macintosh users

- a Customize the settings as needed in the Page Setup dialog:
  - 1 With a document open, choose File > Page Setup.
  - **2** Choose a paper size or create a custom size to match the loaded paper.
  - 3 Click OK.
- **b** Customize the settings as needed in the Print dialog:
  - 1 With a document open, choose File > Print.
    If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
  - **2** From the Print dialog and pop-up menus, adjust the settings as needed.

**Note:** To print on a specific paper type, adjust the paper type setting to match the loaded paper, or select the appropriate tray or feeder.

3 Click Print.

## Printing in black and white

From the home screen, navigate to:

Settings > Print Settings > Quality Menu > Print Mode > Black Only >

## **Adjusting toner darkness**

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

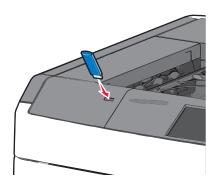
- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- 2 Click Settings > Print Settings > Quality Menu > Toner Darkness.
- **3** Adjust the toner darkness setting.
- 4 Click Submit.

## Printing from a flash drive

### Printing from a flash drive

#### **Notes:**

- Before printing an encrypted PDF file, enter the file password from the printer control panel.
- You cannot print files for which you do not have printing permissions.
- 1 Insert a flash drive into the USB port.



#### Notes:

- If you insert the flash drive when the printer requires attention, such as when a jam has occurred, then the printer ignores the flash drive.
- If you insert the flash drive while the printer is processing other print jobs, then **Busy** appears. After these print jobs are processed, you may need to view the held jobs list to print documents from the flash drive.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the USB cable, any network adapter, any connector, the memory device, or the printer in the areas shown while actively printing, reading, or writing from the memory device. A loss of data can occur.



- **2** From the printer control panel, touch the document you want to print.
- **3** Touch the arrows to increase the number of copies to print, and then touch **Print**.

#### Notes:

- Do not remove the flash drive from the USB port until the document has finished printing.
- If you leave the flash drive in the printer after leaving the initial USB menu screen, then you can still print files from the flash drive as held jobs.

## Supported flash drives and file types

Flash drive	File type
• Lexar JumpDrive 2.0 Pro (256MB, 512MB, or 1GB sizes)	Documents:
• SanDisk Cruzer Mini (256MB, 512MB, or 1GB sizes)	• .pdf
Notes:	• .xps
• Hi-Speed USB flash drives must support the Full-Speed standard. Devices supporting only USB low-speed capabilities are not supported.	Images: • .dcx
<ul> <li>USB flash drives must support the FAT (File Allocation Tables) system. Devices formatted with NTFS (New Technology File System) or any other file system are not supported.</li> </ul>	• .gif • .JPEG
	• .jpg
	• .bmp
	<ul> <li>.pcx</li> </ul>
	• .TIFF
	• .tif
	• .png

## **Printing specialty documents**

### Tips on using letterhead

- Use letterhead designed specifically for laser printers.
- Print samples on the letterhead being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Before loading letterhead, flex the sheets to prevent them from sticking together.
- Observe proper page orientation.

Source	Print side	Paper orientation
<ul> <li>Standard 550-sheet tray</li> <li>Optional 550-sheet tray</li> <li>Optional 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder</li> </ul>	Preprinted letterhead design is placed faceup.	The top edge of the sheet with the logo is placed at the left side of the tray.
Duplex (two-sided) printing from trays	Preprinted letterhead design is placed facedown.	The top edge of the sheet with the logo is placed at the right side of the tray.
Multipurpose feeder (simplex printing)	Preprinted letterhead design is placed facedown.	The top edge of the sheet with the logo should enter the multipurpose feeder first.
Multipurpose feeder (duplex printing)	Preprinted letterhead design is placed faceup.	The top edge of the sheet with the logo should enter the multipurpose feeder last.

**Note:** Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether the chosen preprinted letterhead is acceptable for laser printers.

### Tips on using transparencies

- Print a test page on the transparencies being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Feed transparencies from the multipurpose feeder only.
- From the Paper menu, set the MP Feeder Type to Transparency.
- Use transparencies designed specifically for laser printers. Transparencies must be able to withstand temperatures of 230°C (446°F) without melting, discoloring, offsetting, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- To prevent print quality problems, avoid getting fingerprints on the transparencies.
- Before loading transparencies, flex the stack to prevent sheets from sticking together.
- We recommend Lexmark transparencies. For ordering information, see the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com.

## Tips on using envelopes

Print samples on the envelopes being considered for use before buying large quantities.

- Use envelopes designed specifically for laser printers. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to ensure that the envelopes can withstand temperatures up to 220°C (446°F) without sealing, wrinkling, curling excessively, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- For best performance, use envelopes made from 90-g/m² (24-lb bond) paper or 25% cotton. All-cotton envelopes must not exceed 70-g/m² (20-lb bond) weight.

- Use only new envelopes from undamaged packages.
- To optimize performance and minimize jams, do not use envelopes that:
  - Have excessive curl or twist.
  - Are stuck together or damaged in any way.
  - Have windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, or embossing.
  - Have metal clasps, string ties, or folding bars.
  - Have an interlocking design.
  - Have postage stamps attached.
  - Have any exposed adhesive when the flap is in the sealed or closed position.
  - Have bent corners.
  - Have rough, cockle, or laid finishes.
- Adjust the width guides to fit the width of the envelopes.

Note: A combination of high humidity (over 60%) and high printing temperature may wrinkle or seal envelopes.

### Tips on using labels

Note: Use paper label sheets for occasional use only. Vinyl, pharmacy, and dual-sided labels are not supported.

For detailed information on label printing, characteristics, and design, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide* available on the Lexmark Web site at http://support.lexmark.com.

When printing on labels:

- Use labels designed specifically for laser/LED printers. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to verify that:
  - The labels can withstand temperatures up to 210°C (410°F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.

**Note:** Labels can be printed at a higher fusing temperature up to 220°C (428°F) if Label Weight is set to Heavy. Select this setting using the Embedded Web Server, or from the printer control panel Paper menu.

- Label adhesives, face sheet (printable stock), and topcoats can withstand up to 25 psi (172 kPa) pressure without delaminating, oozing around the edges, or releasing hazardous fumes.
- Do not use labels with slick backing material.
- Use full label sheets. Partial sheets may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a jam. Partial sheets also contaminate the printer and the cartridge with adhesive, and could void the printer and cartridge warranties.
- Do not use labels with exposed adhesive.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 in.) of the edge of the label, of the perforations, or between die-cuts of the label.
- Be sure adhesive backing does not reach to the sheet edge. Zone coating of the adhesive at least 1 mm (0.04 in.) away from edges is recommended. Adhesive material contaminates the printer and could void the warranty.
- If zone coating of the adhesive is not possible, remove a 1.6 mm (0.06 in.) strip on the leading and driver edge, and use a non-oozing adhesive.
- Portrait orientation works best, especially when printing bar codes.

### Tips on using card stock

Card stock is heavy, single-ply specialty media. Many of its variable characteristics, such as moisture content, thickness, and texture, can significantly impact print quality. Print samples on the card stock being considered for use before buying large quantities.

- From the Paper menu, set the Paper Type to Card Stock.
- Select the appropriate Paper Texture setting.
- Be aware that preprinting, perforation, and creasing may significantly affect the print quality and cause jams or other paper handling problems.
- Check with the manufacturer or vendor to ensure the card stock can withstand temperatures up to 220°C (446°F) without releasing hazardous emissions.
- Do not use preprinted card stock manufactured with chemicals that may contaminate the printer. Preprinting introduces semi-liquid and volatile components into the printer.
- Use grain short card stock when possible.

## Printing confidential and other held jobs

### Storing print jobs in the printer

You can set the printer to store print jobs in the printer memory until you start the print job from the printer control panel.

All print jobs that can be initiated by the user at the printer are called *held jobs*.

**Note:** Confidential, Verify, Reserve, and Repeat print jobs may be deleted if the printer requires extra memory to process additional held jobs.

Print job type	Description
Confidential	Confidential lets you hold print jobs in the computer until you enter the PIN from the control panel.
	<b>Note:</b> The PIN is set from the computer. It must be four digits, using the numbers 0–9.
Verify	Verify lets you print one copy of a print job while the printer holds the remaining copies. It allows you to examine if the first copy is satisfactory. The print job is automatically deleted from the printer memory once all copies are printed.
Reserve	Reserve allows the printer to store print jobs for printing at a later time. The print jobs are held until deleted from the Help Jobs menu.
Repeat	Repeat prints and stores print jobs in the printer memory for reprinting.

### Printing confidential and other held jobs

**Note:** Confidential and Verify print jobs are automatically deleted from memory after printing. Repeat and Reserve jobs are held in the printer until you choose to delete them.

#### For Windows users

- 1 With a document open, click File > Print.
- 2 Click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup.
- 3 Click Print and Hold.
- **4** Select the print job type (Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential print job, also enter a four-digit PIN.
- 5 Click OK or Print.
- **6** From the printer home screen, release the print job.
  - For confidential print jobs, navigate to:
    - **Held jobs** > your user name > **Confidential Jobs** > enter PIN > select print job > specify number of copies > **Print**
  - For other print jobs, navigate to:
     Held jobs > your user name > select print job > specify number of copies > Print

#### For Macintosh users

- **1** With a document open, choose **File** > **Print**.
  - If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
- 2 From the print options or Copies & Pages pop-up menu, choose Job Routing.
- **3** Select the print job type (Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential print job, also enter a four-digit PIN.
- 4 Click OK or Print.
- **5** From the printer home screen, release the print job.
  - For confidential print jobs, navigate to:
    - **Held jobs** > your user name > **Confidential Jobs** > enter PIN > select print job > specify number of copies > **Print**
  - For other print jobs, navigate to:
    - Held jobs > your user name > select print job > specify number of copies > Print

## **Printing information pages**

### Printing a font sample list

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:
  - > Reports > Print Fonts
- 2 Touch PCL Fonts or PostScript Fonts.

### **Printing a directory list**

A directory list shows the resources stored in a flash memory or on the printer hard disk.

From the home screen, navigate to:

> Reports > Print Directory

## Canceling a print job

There are several methods for canceling a print job. The following sections explain how to cancel a print job from the printer control panel, or from a computer depending on the operating system.

### Canceling a print job from the printer control panel

- 1 Touch Cancel Jobs on the touch screen, or press X on the keypad.
- 2 Touch the job you want to cancel, and then touch **Delete Selected Jobs**.

### Canceling a print job from the computer

### For Windows users

- 1 Open the printers folder:
  - a Click 5, or click Start and then click Run.
  - **b** In the Start Search or Run box, type control printers.
  - c Press Enter, or click OK.
- 2 Double-click the printer icon.
- **3** Select the print job you want to cancel.
- 4 From the keyboard, press Delete.

#### For Macintosh users

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later:

- 1 From the Apple menu, choose System Preferences > Print & Fax > Open Print Queue.
- **2** From the printer window, select the print job you want to cancel.
- 3 From the icon bar at the top of the window, click the **Delete** icon.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier:

**1** From the Finder, navigate to:

#### Go > Applications

- 2 Double-click Utilities > Print Center or Printer Setup Utility.
- **3** Double-click the printer icon.

- From the printer window, select the print job you want to cancel.
- From the icon bar at the top of the window, click the **Delete** icon.

# **Understanding printer menus**

## **Menus list**

Supplies	Paper Menu	Reports	Settings
Cyan Cartridge	Default Source	Menu Settings Page	General Settings
Magenta Cartridge	Paper Size/Type	Device Statistics	Flash Drive Menu
Yellow Cartridge	Configure MP	Network Setup Page	Print Settings
Black Cartridge	Substitute Size	Network [x] Setup Page	Setup Menu
Waste Toner Bottle	Paper Texture	Profiles List	Finishing Menu
Fuser	Paper Weight	Print Fonts	Quality Menu
Transfer Module	Paper Loading	Print Directory	Job Accounting Menu
Staples	Custom Types	Asset Report	Utilities Menu
Hole Punch Box	Custom Names		XPS Menu
	Custom Bin Names		PDF Menu
	Universal Setup		PostScript Menu
	Bin Setup		PCL Emul Menu
			HTML Menu
			Image Menu

Security	Network/Ports	Help
Miscellaneous Security Settings	Active NIC	Print All Guides
Confidential Print	Standard Network or Network [x]*	Color Quality
Disk Wiping	Standard USB	Print Quality
Security Audit Log	Parallel [x]	Printing Guide
Set Date and Time	Serial [x]	Media Guide
	SMTP Setup	Print Defects Guide
		Menu Map
		Information Guide
		Connection Guide
		Moving Guide
		Supplies Guide

<sup>\*</sup> Depending on the printer setup, this menu appears as Standard Network, Network [x], or Wireless Network.

# Supplies menu

Menu item	Description
Cyan Cartridge	Shows the status of the cyan print cartridge
Early Warning	
Invalid	
Critically Low	
Missing	
Defective	
OK	
Unsupported	
Magenta Cartridge	Shows the status of the magenta print cartridge
Early Warning	
Invalid	
Critically Low	
Missing	
Defective	
OK	
Unsupported	
Yellow Cartridge	Shows the status of the yellow print cartridge
Early Warning	
Invalid	
Critically Low	
Missing	
Defective	
ОК	
Unsupported	
Black Cartridge	Shows the status of the black print cartridge
Early Warning	
Invalid	
Critically Low	
Missing	
Defective	
ОК	
Unsupported	
Waste Toner Bottle	Shows the status of the waste toner bottle
Near Full	
Replace	
Missing	
OK	

Menu item	Description
Fuser	Shows the status of the fuser
Early Warning	
Low	
Replace	
Missing	
ОК	
Transfer module	Shows the status of the transfer module
Early Warning	
Low	
Replace	
Missing	
ОК	
Staple Cartridge	Shows the status of the staple cartridge
Early Warning	
Low	
Replace	
Missing	
ОК	
Hole Punch Box	Shows the status of the hole punch box
Near Full	
Replace	
Missing	
ОК	

# Paper menu

## **Default Source menu**

Menu item	Description
Default Source	Sets a default paper source for all print jobs
Tray [x] MP Feeder Manual Paper Manual Envelope	<ul> <li>Notes:</li> <li>Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting.</li> <li>From the Paper menu, Configure MP feeder must be set to Cassette for MP feeder to appear as a menu setting.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>If the same size and type of paper are in two trays and the Paper Size and Paper Type settings match, then the trays are automatically linked. When one tray is empty, the print job continues using the linked tray.</li> </ul>

## Paper Size/Type menu

Menu item	Description
Tray [x] Size	Specifies the paper size loaded in each tray
Letter	Notes:
Legal Executive Oficio (Mexico) Folio Statement Universal A4 A5	<ul> <li>Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>For trays with automatic size sensing, only the size detected by the hardware appears.</li> <li>If the same size and type of paper are in two trays and the Paper Size and Paper Type settings match, then the trays are automatically linked. When one tray is empty, the print job uses the linked tray.</li> </ul>
JIS B5	
Tray [x] Type  Plain Paper Card Stock Transparency Recycled Glossy Heavy Glossy Labels Vinyl Labels Bond Letterhead Preprinted Colored Paper Light Paper Heavy Paper Rough/Cotton Paper Custom Type [x]	<ul> <li>Notes:</li> <li>Plain Paper is the factory default setting for Tray 1. Custom Type [x] is the factory default setting for all other trays.</li> <li>If available, a user-defined name will appear instead of Custom Type [x]</li> <li>Use this menu item to configure automatic tray linking.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
MP Feeder Size	Specifies the paper size loaded in the multipurpose feeder
Letter	Notes:
Legal	
Executive	Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory  default action.
Oficio (Mexico)	default setting.
Folio	<ul> <li>From the Paper menu, Configure MP Feeder must be set to Cassette for MP Feeder to appear as a menu item.</li> </ul>
Statement	MP reeder to appear as a menu item.
Universal	
7 3/4 Envelope	
9 Envelope	
10 Envelope	
DL Envelope	
C5 Envelope	
B5 Envelope	
Other Envelope	
A4	
A5	
A6	
JIS B5	
MP Feeder Type	Specifies the type of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder
Custom Type [x]	Notes:
Plain Paper	
Card Stock	Custom Type [x] is the factory default setting.
Transparency	• From the Paper menu, Configure MP Feeder must be set to Cassette for
Recycled	MP Feeder to appear as a menu item.
Glossy	
Heavy Glossy	
Labels	
Vinyl Labels	
Bond	
Envelope	
Rough Envelope	
Letterhead	
Preprinted	
Colored Paper	
Light Paper	
Heavy Paper	
Rough/Cotton Paper	

**Note:** Only installed trays are listed in this menu.

Menu item	Description
Manual Paper Size	Specifies the size of the paper being manually loaded
Letter	<b>Note:</b> Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory
Legal	default setting.
Executive	
Oficio (Mexico)	
Folio	
Statement	
Universal	
A4	
A5	
A6	
JIS B5	
Manual Paper Type	Specifies the type of paper being manually loaded
Plain Paper	Note: Plain Paper is the factory default setting.
Card Stock	Note: Flam Faper is the factory default setting.
Transparency	
Recycled	
Glossy	
Heavy Glossy	
Labels	
Vinyl Labels	
Bond	
Letterhead	
Preprinted	
Colored Paper	
Light Paper	
Heavy Paper	
Rough/Cotton Paper	
Custom Type [x]	
Manual Envelope Size	Specifies the size of the envelope being manually loaded
10 Envelope	<b>Note:</b> 10 Envelope is the US factory default setting. DL Envelope is the
DL Envelope	international factory default setting.
C5 Envelope	
B5 Envelope	
Other Envelope	
7 3/4 Envelope	
9 Envelope	
Manual Envelope Type	Specifies the type of envelope being manually loaded
Envelope	
Rough Envelope	<b>Note:</b> Envelope is the factory default setting.
Custom Type [x]	
Note: Only installed trays are lister	

## **Configure MP menu**

Menu item	Description
Configure MP  Cassette  Manual  First	Determines when the printer selects paper from the multipurpose feeder  Notes:  Cassette is the factory default setting. Cassette configures the multipurpose
	<ul> <li>feeder as the automatic paper source.</li> <li>Manual sets the multipurpose feeder only for manual feed print jobs.</li> <li>First configures the multipurpose feeder as the primary paper source.</li> </ul>

## Substitute Size menu

Menu item	Description
Substitute Size	Substitutes a specified paper size if the requested paper size is not available
All Listed	Notes:
Off Statement/A5 Letter/A4	<ul> <li>All Listed is the factory default setting. All available size substitutions are allowed.</li> </ul>
Letter/A4	Off indicates no size substitutions are allowed.
	<ul> <li>Setting a size substitution lets a print job continue without a Change Paper message appearing.</li> </ul>

## Paper Texture menu

Menu item	Description
Plain Texture  Normal  Rough  Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the plain paper loaded  Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Card Stock Texture  Normal  Rough  Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the card stock loaded  Notes:  Normal is the factory default setting. Settings appear only if card stock is supported.
Transparency Texture  Normal  Rough  Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the transparencies loaded  Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Recycled Texture  Normal  Rough  Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the recycled paper loaded  Note: Normal is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Glossy Texture	Specifies the relative texture of the glossy paper loaded
Normal Rough	<b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
Smooth	
Heavy Glossy Texture	Specifies the relative texture of the glossy paper loaded
Normal	<b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
Rough Smooth	
Labels Texture	Specifies the relative texture of the labels loaded
Normal	Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Rough	
Smooth	
Vinyl Labels Texture	Specifies the relative texture of the vinyl labels loaded
Normal	<b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
Rough Smooth	
Bond Texture	Specifies the relative texture of the bond paper loaded
Rough	Note: Rough is the factory default setting.
Smooth	
Normal	
Envelope Texture	Specifies the relative texture of the envelopes loaded
Normal	<b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
Rough Smooth	
Rough Envelope Texture	Specifies the relative texture of the envelopes loaded
Rough	Note: Rough is the factory default setting.
Letterhead Texture	Specifies the relative texture of the letterhead loaded
Normal	Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Rough	<b>6</b>
Smooth	
Preprinted Texture	Specifies the relative texture of the preprinted paper loaded
Normal	<b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
Rough Smooth	
	Considerable valative touture of the coloned paper landed
Colored Texture  Normal	Specifies the relative texture of the colored paper loaded
Rough	Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Smooth	
Light Texture	Specifies the relative texture of the paper loaded
Normal	Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Rough	
Smooth	

Menu item	Description
Heavy Texture  Normal  Rough  Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the paper loaded  Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Rough/Cotton Texture Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the cotton paper loaded  Note: Rough is the factory default setting.
Custom [x] Texture  Normal  Rough  Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the custom paper loaded  Notes:  Normal is the factory default setting.  Settings appear only if the custom type is supported.

## Paper Weight menu

Menu item	Description
Plain Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the plain paper loaded
Normal	Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy	
Light	
Card Stock Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the card stock loaded
Normal	Notes:
Heavy	Normal is the factory default setting.
Light	, ,
	Settings appear only if card stock is supported.
Transparency Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the transparencies loaded
Normal	Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy	
Light	
Recycled Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the recycled paper loaded
Normal	Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy	
Light	
Glossy Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the glossy paper loaded
Normal	Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy	
Light	
Heavy Glossy Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the glossy paper loaded
Heavy	<b>Note:</b> Heavy is the factory default setting.
Labels Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the labels loaded
Normal	Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy	
Light	

Menu item	Description
Vinyl Labels Weight	Specifies the relative weight of vinyl labels loaded
Normal	Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy	
Light	
Bond Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the bond paper loaded
Normal	Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy	
Light	
Envelope Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the envelopes loaded
Normal	Note: Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy	
Light	
Rough Envelope Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the envelopes loaded
Heavy	<b>Note:</b> Heavy is the factory default setting.
Light	
Normal	
Letterhead Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the letterhead loaded
Normal	<b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy	, ,
Light	
Preprinted Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the preprinted paper loaded
Normal	<b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy	, ,
Light	
Colored Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the colored paper loaded
Normal	<b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy	
Light	
Light Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the paper loaded
Light	Note: Light is the factory default setting.
Heavy Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the paper loaded
Heavy	<b>Note:</b> Heavy is the factory default setting.
Rough/Cotton Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the cotton paper loaded
Normal	<b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy	note: Hollians the factory default setting.
Light	
Custom [x] Weight	Specifies the relative weight of the custom paper loaded
Normal	Notes:
Heavy	
Light	<ul> <li>Normal is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Settings appear only if the custom type is supported.</li> </ul>

## Paper Loading menu

Menu item	Description
Card Stock Loading Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Card Stock as the paper type
Duplex	Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Recycled Loading Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Recycled as the paper type
Duplex	Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Glossy Loading Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Glossy as the paper type
Duplex	<b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
Heavy Glossy Loading Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Heavy Glossy as the paper type
Duplex	<b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
Labels Loading Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Labels as the paper type
Duplex	Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Vinyl Labels Loading Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Vinyl Labels as the paper type
Duplex	Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Bond Loading Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Bond as the paper type
Duplex	Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Letterhead Loading Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Letterhead as the paper type
Duplex	<b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
Preprinted Loading Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Preprinted as the paper type
Duplex	Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Colored Loading Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Colored as the paper type
Duplex	Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Light Loading	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that
Off	specify Light as the paper type
Duplex	<b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.

### Notes:

- Duplex sets the printer default to 2-sided printing for every print job unless 1-sided printing is selected from Print Properties.
- If Duplex is selected, then all print jobs are sent through the duplex unit, including 1-sided print jobs.

Menu item	Description
Heavy Loading Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Heavy as the paper type
Duplex	<b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
Rough/Cotton Loading Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Rough or Cotton as the paper type
Duplex	<b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
Custom [x] Loading Off	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Custom [x] as the paper type
Duplex	Notes:
	Off is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>Custom [x] Loading is available only if the custom paper type is supported.</li> </ul>

### Notes:

- Duplex sets the printer default to 2-sided printing for every print job unless 1-sided printing is selected from Print Properties.
- If Duplex is selected, then all print jobs are sent through the duplex unit, including 1-sided print jobs.

## **Custom Types menu**

Menu item	Description
Custom Type [x]  Paper Card Stock Transparency Glossy Rough/Cotton Labels Vinyl Labels Envelope	Associates a paper or specialty media type with a factory default Custom Type [x] name or a user-defined Custom Name created from the Embedded Web Server or from MarkVision™ Professional  Notes:  Paper is the factory default setting.  The custom media type must be supported by the selected tray or multipurpose feeder in order to print from that source.
Recycled Paper Card Stock Transparency Glossy Rough/Cotton Labels Vinyl Labels Envelope	<ul> <li>Specifies a paper type when the Recycled setting is selected in other menus</li> <li>Notes: <ul> <li>Paper is the factory default setting.</li> <li>The custom media type must be supported by the selected tray or multipurpose feeder in order to print from that source.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

### **Custom Names menu**

Menu item	Definition
Custom Name [x]	Specify a custom name for a paper type. This name replaces the Custom
[none]	Type [x] name in the printer menus.

### **Custom Bin Names menu**

Menu Item	Description
Standard Bin	Specifies a custom name for the Standard Bin
Bin [x]	Specifies a custom name for Bin [x]

## **Universal Setup menu**

These menu items are used to specify the height and width of the Universal paper size. The Universal paper size is a user-defined paper size setting. It is listed with the other paper size settings and includes similar options, such as support for duplex printing and printing multiple pages on one sheet.

Menu item	Description
Units of Measure	Identifies the unit of measure
Inches Millimeters	<b>Note:</b> Inches is the US factory default setting. Millimeters is the international factory default setting.
Portrait Width	Sets the portrait width
3–48 inches 76–1219 mm	Notes:  • If the width exceeds the maximum, then the printer uses the maximum width allowed.
	<ul> <li>8.5 inches is the US factory default setting. 216 mm is the international factory default setting.</li> </ul>
	The width can be increased in 0.01-inch or in 1-mm increments.
Portrait Height	Sets the portrait height
3–48 inches	Notes:
76–1219 mm	<ul> <li>If the height exceeds the maximum, then the printer uses the maximum height allowed.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>14 inches is the US factory default setting. 356 mm is the international factory default setting.</li> </ul>
	The height can be increased in 0.01-inch or in 1-mm increments.
Feed Direction	Specifies the feed direction
Short Edge	Notes:
Long Edge	Short Edge is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>Long Edge appears only if the longest edge is shorter than the maximum width supported in the tray.</li> </ul>

## Bin Setup menu

Menu item	Description
Output Bin	Specifies the default exit bin
Standard Bin	<b>Note:</b> Standard Bin is the factory default setting.
Bin [x]	, ,
Configure Bins	Specifies configuration options for exit bins
Mailbox	Notes:
Link	• Mailbay is the factomy default cathing. This cathing
Mail Overflow	<ul> <li>Mailbox is the factory default setting. This setting treats each bin as a separate mailbox.</li> </ul>
Link Optional	Link configures all available bins as one large exit bin.
Type Assignment	Mail Overflow assigns an overflow bin when the
	mailbox bins become full.
	Link Optional links together all available exit bins
	except the standard bin and only appears when at least
	two optional bins are installed.
	<ul> <li>Type Assignment assigns each paper type to an exit bin or linked bin set.</li> </ul>
	Bins assigned the same name are automatically linked
	unless Link Optional is selected.
Overflow Bin	Specifies an alternate exit bin when a designated bin is full
Standard Bin	<b>Note:</b> Standard Bin is the factory default setting.
Bin [x]	
Assign Type/Bin	Selects an exit bin for each supported paper type
Plain Paper Bin	Select from the following options for each type:
Card Stock Bin	Disabled
Transparency Bin	Standard Bin
Recycled Bin	Bin [x]
Glossy Bin	<b>Note:</b> Disabled is the factory default setting.
Heavy Glossy Bin	
Labels Bin	
Vinyl Labels Bin	
Bond Bin	
Envelope Bin	
Rough Envelope Bin Letterhead Bin	
Preprinted Bin	
Colored Bin	
Light Paper Bin	
Heavy Paper Bin	
Rough/Cotton Bin	
Custom [x] Bin	

# Reports menu

## Reports menu

Menu item	Description
Menu Settings Page	Prints a report containing information about the paper loaded into trays, installed memory, total page count, alarms, timeouts, printer control panel language, TCP/IP address, status of supplies, status of the network connection, and other information
Device Statistics	Prints a report containing printer statistics such as supply information and details about printed pages
Network Setup Page	Prints a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address information
	<b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only in network printers or in printers connected to print servers.
Network [x] Setup Page	Prints a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address information
	Notes:
	<ul> <li>This selection is available when more than one network option is installed.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>This menu item appears only in network printers or in printers connected to print servers.</li> </ul>
Profiles List	Prints a list of profiles stored in the printer
Print Fonts PCL Fonts	Prints a report of all the fonts available for the printer language currently set in the printer
PostScript Fonts	<b>Note:</b> A separate list is available for PCL and PostScript emulations.
Print Directory	Prints a list of all the resources stored on an optional flash memory card or printer hard disk
	Notes:
	<ul> <li>Job Buffer Size must be set to 100%.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Make sure the optional flash memory or printer hard disk is installed correctly and working properly.</li> </ul>
Asset Report	Prints a report containing printer asset information, such as serial number and model name
	<b>Note:</b> The report contains text and UPC barcodes that can be scanned into an asset database.

# Network/Ports menu

### **Active NIC menu**

Menu item	Description
Active NIC	Notes:
Auto [list of available network cards]	Auto is the factory default setting.
	This menu item appears only if an optional network card is installed.

## Standard Network or Network [x] menus

**Note:** Only active ports appear in this menu; all inactive ports are omitted.

Menu item	Description
PCL SmartSwitch On	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language
Off	Notes:
	On is the factory default setting.
	When Off is used, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses     PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer     language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.
PS SmartSwitch On	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language
Off	Notes:
	On is the factory default setting.
	When Off is used, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses     PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer     language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.
NPA Mode Auto	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol
Off	Notes:
	Auto is the factory default setting.
	Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.

Menu item	Description
Network Buffer	Sets the size of the network input buffer
Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed]	Notes:
	Auto is the factory default setting.  The value and he sharped in 1/10 in appropriate.
	The value can be changed in 1-KB increments.  The requirements are allowed depends on the arresponding the project of recommends in the project of recommends.
	<ul> <li>The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>To increase the maximum size range for the Network Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and USB buffers.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
Job Buffering Off	Temporarily stores print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing. This menu only appears if a formatted disk is installed.
On	Notes:
Auto	Off is the factory default setting.
	On buffers print jobs on the printer hard disk.
	<ul> <li>Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
Mac Binary PS	Sets the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs
Auto	Notes:
On	Auto is the factory default setting.
Off	Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol.
	On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.
Standard Naturally Cature	
Standard Network Setup Reports	Displays and sets the printer network settings.
Network Card	<b>Note:</b> The Wireless menu appears only when the printer is connected to a wireless network.
TCP/IP	TICK OF M
IPv6	
Wireless	
AppleTalk	
Network [x] Setup	
Reports	
Network Card	
TCP/IP	
IPv6	
Wireless	
AppleTalk	

## **Network Reports menu**

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup > Reports or Network Reports

Menu item	Description
Print Setup Page	Prints a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address

### **Network Card menu**

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup > Network Card

Menu item	Description
View Card Status	Lets you view the connection status of the Network Card
Connected	
Disconnected	
View Card Speed	Lets you view the speed of a currently active network card
Network Address	Lets you view the network addresses
UAA	
LAA	
Job Timeout	Sets the amount of time in seconds before a network print job is canceled
0	Note: 90 seconds is the factory default setting.
10–225	
Banner Page	Allows the printer to print a banner page
Off	Note: Off is the factory default setting.
On	

## TCP/IP menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup > TCP/IP

**Note:** This menu is available only in network models or printers attached to print servers.

Menu item	Description
Activate	Activates TCP/IP
On	Note: On is the factory default setting.
Off	
Set Hostname	Lets you set the current TCP/IP hostname
	Note: This can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
IP Address	Lets you view or change the current TCP/IP address
	<b>Note:</b> Manually setting the IP address sets the Enable DHCP and Enable Auto IP settings to Off. It also sets Enable BOOTP and Enable RARP to Off on systems that support BOOTP and RARP.

Menu item	Description
Netmask	Lets you view or change the current TCP/IP netmask
Gateway	Lets you view or change the current TCP/IP gateway
Enable DHCP	Specifies the DHCP address and parameter assignment setting
On Off	Note: On is the factory default setting.
Enable RARP	Specifies the RARP address assignment setting
On Off	Note: On is the factory default setting.
Enable BOOTP	Specifies the BOOTP address assignment setting
On Off	Note: On is the factory default setting.
Enable AutoIP	Specifies the Zero Configuration Networking setting
Yes No	Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
Enable FTP/TFTP  Yes	Enables the built-in FTP server, which allows you to send files to the printer using File Transfer Protocol.
No	Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
Enable HTTP Server Yes	Enables the built-in web server (Embedded Web Server). When enabled, the printer can be monitored and managed remotely using a web browser.
No	Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
WINS Server Address	Lets you view or change the current WINS server address
Enable DDNS	Lets you view or change the current DDNS setting
Yes No	Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
Enable mDNS	Lets you view or change the current mDNS setting
Yes No	Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
DNS Server Address	Lets you view or change the current DNS server address
Enable HTTPS	Lets you view or change the current HTTPS setting
Yes No	Note: Yes is the factory default setting.

## IPv6 menu

**Note:** This menu is available only in network models or in printers attached to print servers.

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

#### Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup > IPv6

Menu item	Description
Enable IPv6	Enables IPv6 in the printer
On	Note: On is the factory default setting.
Off	
Auto Configuration	Specifies whether the network adapter accepts the automatic IPv6
On	address configuration entries provided by a router
Off	Note: On is the factory default setting.
Set Hostname	Lets you set the printer host name
View Address	Shows the printer IPv6 address
	<b>Note:</b> The IPv6 address can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
View Router Address	Shows the router address
	<b>Note:</b> The router address can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
Enable DHCPv6	Enables DHCPv6 in the printer
On	Note: On is the factory default setting.
Off	

### Wireless menu

Use the following menu items to view or configure the wireless internal print server settings.

**Note:** This menu is available only for models connected to a wireless network.

The Wireless menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

### Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup > Wireless

Menu item	Description
WPS PBC Mode	Lets you connect the printer to a wireless network by pressing buttons on both the printer and the access point (wireless router) within a given period of time
WPS PIN Mode	Lets you connect the printer to a wireless network by using a PIN on the printer and entering it into the wireless settings of the access point
WPS Auto Detect Disable Enable	Automatically detects the connection method that an access point with WPS uses— WPS Push Button Configuration (PBC) or WPS Personal Identification Number (PIN)
	Note: Disable is the factory default setting.
Network Mode  Ad hoc  Infrastructure	Specifies the network mode  Notes:
	<ul> <li>Ad hoc is the factory default setting. This configures wireless connection directly between the printer and a computer.</li> <li>Infrastructure lets the printer access a network using an access point.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
Compatibility 802.11b/g/n 802.11n 802.11b/g	Specifies the wireless standard for the wireless network  Note: The 802.11b/g/n is the factory default setting.
Choose Network [list of available networks]	Lets you select an available network for the printer to use
View Signal Quality	Lets you view the quality of the wireless connection
View Security Mode	Lets you view the encryption method that a wireless network uses

**Note:** Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) is a simple and secure configuration that allows you to establish a wireless network and enable network security without requiring prior knowledge of Wi-Fi technology. It is no longer necessary to configure the network name (SSID) and WEP key or WPA passphrase for network devices.

## AppleTalk menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup > AppleTalk

Menu item	Description
Activate	Activates AppleTalk support
Yes No	Note: Yes is the factory default setting.
View Name	Shows the assigned AppleTalk name  Note: The name can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
View Address	Shows the assigned AppleTalk address  Note: The address can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
Set Zone [default] [list of zones available on the network]	Provides a list of AppleTalk zones available on the network  Note: When "default" is selected, the printer uses the AppleTalk zone that the router identifies as the default zone for the network. If no default zone exists, then the zone marked with an * is the default setting.

### Standard USB menu

Menu item	Description
PCL SmartSwitch On	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language
Off	Notes:
	On is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses     PostScript emulation if the PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer     language specified in the Setup menu if the PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
PS SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language  Notes:  On is the factory default setting.  When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if the PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if the PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.
NPA Mode Auto On Off	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol  Notes:  Auto is the factory default setting. Auto sets the printer to examine data, determine the format, and then process it appropriately.  Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
USB Buffer Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed] Disabled	<ul> <li>Sets the size of the USB input buffer</li> <li>Notes:</li> <li>Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>Disabled turns off job buffering. Any jobs already buffered on the printer hard disk are printed before normal processing resumes.</li> <li>The USB buffer size value can be changed in 1-KB increments.</li> <li>The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off.</li> <li>To increase the maximum size range for the USB Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and network buffers.</li> <li>Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
Job Buffering Off On Auto	<ul> <li>Notes:</li> <li>Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>On buffers jobs on the printer hard disk.</li> <li>Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port.</li> <li>Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
Mac Binary PS Auto On Off	Sets the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs  Notes:  Auto is the factory default setting.  On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.  Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol.

Menu item	Description
ENA Address	Sets the network address information for an external print server
ууу.ууу.ууу.ууу	<b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA Netmask	Sets the netmask information for an external print server
ууу.ууу.ууу.ууу	<b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA Gateway	Sets the gateway information for an external print server
ууу.ууу.ууу	<b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.

## Parallel [x] menu

Menu item	Description
PCL SmartSwitch On	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language
Off	Notes:
	On is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses     PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer     language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>
PS SmartSwitch On	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language
Off	Notes:
	On is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>
NPA Mode Auto	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol
On	Notes:
Off	Auto is the factory default setting.
	Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.

	Description
Parallel Buffer	Sets the size of the parallel input buffer
Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed] Disabled	Notes:
	Auto is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>Disabled turns off job buffering. Any print jobs already buffered on the printer hard disk are printed before normal processing resumes.</li> </ul>
	The parallel buffer size setting can be changed in 1-KB increments.
	• The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off.
	• To increase the maximum size range for the Parallel Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the USB, serial, and network buffers.
	• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Job Buffering	Temporarily stores print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing
Off	Notes:
On	Off is the factory default setting.
Auto	On buffers print jobs on the printer hard disk.
	<ul> <li>Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port.</li> </ul>
	• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Advanced Status	Enables bidirectional communication through the parallel port
On	Notes:
Off	On is the factory default setting.
	Off disables parallel port negotiation.
Protocol	Specifies the parallel port protocol
Fastbytes Standard	Notes:
	<ul> <li>Fastbytes is the factory default setting. It provides compatibility with most existing parallel ports and is the recommended setting.</li> </ul>
	Standard tries to resolve parallel port communication problems.
Honor Init Off	Determines if the printer honors printer hardware initialization requests from the computer
On	Notes:
	Off is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>The computer requests initialization by activating the Init signal from the parallel port. Many personal computers activate the Init signal each time the computer is turned on.</li> </ul>
Parallel Mode 2	Determines if the parallel port data is sampled on the leading or trailing edge of a strobe
Off	Note: On is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Mac Binary PS	Sets the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs
Auto On	Notes:
Off	Auto is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol.</li> </ul>
	On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.
ENA Address	Sets the network address information for an external print server
ууу.ууу.ууу	<b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA Netmask	Sets the netmask information for an external print server
ууу.ууу.ууу	<b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA gateway	Sets the gateway information for an external print server
ууу.ууу.ууу	<b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.

# Serial [x] menu

Menu item	Description
PCL SmartSwitch On	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language
Off	Notes:
	On is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses     PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer     language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>
PS SmartSwitch	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received
On	through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language
Off	Notes:
	On is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
NPA Mode Auto	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol
On	Notes:
Off	<ul> <li>Auto is the factory default setting. Auto sets the printer to examine data, determine the format, and then processes it appropriately.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>When set to On, the printer performs NPA processing. If the data is not in NPA format, it is rejected as bad data.</li> </ul>
	When set to Off, the printer does not perform NPA processing.
	Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Serial Buffer	Sets the size of the serial input buffer
Auto	Notes:
3KB to [maximum size allowed] Disabled	Auto is the factory default setting.
Disabled	<ul> <li>Disabled turns off job buffering. Any jobs already buffered on the disk are printed before normal processing is resumed.</li> </ul>
	The serial buffer size setting can be changed in 1-KB increments.
	• The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off.
	• To increase the maximum size range for the Serial Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and network buffers.
	• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Job Buffering	Temporarily stores print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing
Off	Notes:
On Auto	Off is the factory default setting. The printer does not buffer print jobs on the printer hard disk.
	On buffers print jobs on the printer hard disk.
	<ul> <li>Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port.</li> </ul>
	• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Protocol	Selects the hardware and software handshaking settings for the serial port
DTR	Notes:
DTR/DSR XON/XOFF XON/XOFF/DTR	DTR is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>DTR/DSR is a hardware handshaking setting.</li> </ul>
XONXOFF/DTRDSR	XON/XOFF is a software handshaking setting.
, -	XON/XOFF/DTR and XON/XOFF/DTR/DSR are combined hardware and software handshaking settings.

Menu item	Description
Robust XON Off On	Determines whether the printer communicates availability to the computer  Notes:  Off is the factory default setting.  This menu item applies only to the serial port if Serial Protocol is set to XON/XOFF.
Baud  9600  19200  38400  57600  115200  138200  172800  230400  345600  1200  2400  4800	<ul> <li>Specifies the rate at which data can be received through the serial port</li> <li>Notes: <ul> <li>9600 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>138200, 172800, 230400, and 345600 baud rates are only displayed in the Standard Serial menu. These settings do not appear in the Serial Option 1, Serial Option 2, or Serial Option 3 menus.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Data Bits  8  7	Specifies the number of data bits sent in each transmission frame  Note: 8 is the factory default setting.
Parity None Ignore Even Odd	Sets the parity for serial input and output data frames  Note: None is the factory default setting.
Honor DSR Off On	<ul> <li>Determines whether the printer uses the DSR Signal</li> <li>Notes:</li> <li>Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>DSR is a handshaking signal used by most serial cables. The serial port uses DSR to distinguish data sent by the computer from data created by electrical noise in the serial cable. The electrical noise can cause stray characters to print. Set this to On to prevent stray characters from printing.</li> </ul>

## SMTP Setup menu

Menu item	Description
Primary SMTP Gateway	Specifies SMTP server gateway and port information
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	Note: 25 is the default SMTP gateway port.
Secondary SMTP Gateway	
Secondary SMTP Gateway Port	

Menu item	Description
SMTP Timeout 5–30	Specifies the amount of time in seconds before the server stops trying to send an e-mail
	Note: 30 seconds is the factory default setting.
Reply Address	Specifies a reply address of up to 128 characters in the e-mail sent by the printer
Use SSL Disabled	Sets the printer to use SSL for increased security when connecting to the SMTP server
Negotiate	Notes:
Required	Disabled is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>When the Negotiate setting is used, the SMTP server determines if SSL will be used.</li> </ul>
SMTP Server Authentication  No authentication required	Specifies the type of user authentication required for scan to e-mail privileges
Login/Plain CRAM-MD5 Digest-MD5 NTLM Kerberos 5	Note: "No authentication required" is the factory default setting.
Device-Initiated E-mail None	Specifies what credentials will be used when communicating to the SMTP server. Some SMTP servers require credentials to send an e-mail.
Use Device SMTP Credentials	Notes:
User-Initiated E-mail None	<ul> <li>None is the factory default setting for Device and User-Initiated E-mail.</li> </ul>
Use Device SMTP Credentials Use Session User ID & Password Use Session E-mail address & Password Prompt User	<ul> <li>Device Userid and Device Password are used to log in to the SMTP server when Use Device SMTP Credentials is selected.</li> </ul>
Device Userid	
Device Password	
Kerberos 5 Realm	
NTLM Domain	

# **Security menu**

## **Miscellaneous Security Settings menu**

Menu item	Description
Login Restriction Login failures	Limits the number and time frames of failed login attempts from the printer control panel before <i>all</i> users are locked out
1–10 Failure time frame	Notes:
1–60 Lockout time	<ul> <li>"Login failures" specifies the number of failed login attempts before users are locked out. 3 attempts is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
1–60 Panel Login Timeout 1–900	<ul> <li>"Failure time frame" specifies the time frame during which failed login attempts can be made before users are locked out. 5 minutes is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>"Lockout time" specifies how long users are locked out after exceeding the login failures limit. 5 minutes is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
Remote Login Timeout 1–120	<ul> <li>Panel Login Timeout specifies how long the printer remains idle on the home screen before automatically logging the user off. 30 seconds is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Remote Login Timeout specifies how long a remote interface (for example, a Web page) can remain idle before automatically logging the user off. 10 minutes is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>

### **Confidential Print menu**

Menu item	Description
Max Invalid PIN Off 2-10	<ul> <li>Limits the number of times an invalid PIN can be entered</li> <li>Notes:</li> <li>This menu appears only if a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed.</li> <li>Once the limit is reached, the print job for that user name and that PIN are deleted.</li> </ul>
Confidential Job Expiration Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week	<ul> <li>Limits the amount of time a confidential print job stays in the printer before it is deleted</li> <li>Notes:</li> <li>If the Job Expiration setting is changed while confidential print jobs reside on the printer RAM or printer hard disk, then the expiration time for those print jobs does not change to the new default value.</li> <li>If the printer is turned off, then all confidential jobs held in printer RAM are deleted.</li> </ul>
Repeat Job Expiration Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week Note: Off is the factory defa	Sets a time limit on how long the printer stores print jobs

Menu item	Description
Verify Job Expiration	Sets a time limit on how long the printer stores print jobs needing verification
Off	
1 hour	
4 hours	
24 hours	
1 week	
Reserve Job Expiration	Sets a time limit on how long the printer stores print jobs for printing at a later time
Off	
1 hour	
4 hours	
24 hours	
1 week	

### **Disk Wiping menu**

Disk Wiping erases *only* print job data on the printer hard disk that *are not* currently in use by the file system. All permanent data on the printer hard disk are preserved, such as downloaded fonts, macros, and held jobs.

**Note:** This menu appears only if a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed.

Menu item	Description
Wiping Mode Auto Manual Off	Disk Wiping erases <i>only</i> print job data that <i>is not</i> currently in use by the file system from the printer hard disk. All permanent data on the printer hard disk is preserved, such as downloaded fonts, macros, and held jobs.  Notes:
	Auto is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>Due to the large amount of resources required for Automatic Wiping, activating this option may decrease printer performance, especially if the printer requires hard disk space faster than it can be wiped and returned to service.</li> </ul>
Manual Wiping  Do not start now  Start now	Manual Wiping overwrites all disk space that has been used to hold data from a print job that has been processed (printed). This type of wipe <i>does not</i> erase any information related to an unprocessed print job.
	Notes:
	"Do not start now" is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>If the Disk Wiping access control is activated, then a user must successfully authenticate and have the required authorization in order to initiate the disk wipe.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
Automatic Method Single pass	Automatic wiping marks all disk space used by a previous print job and does not permit the file system to reuse this space until it has been cleared.
Multiple pass	Only Automatic wiping enables users to activate disk wiping without having to turn the printer off for an extended amount of time.
	Notes:
	"Single pass" is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>Highly confidential information should be wiped using only the Multiple pass method.</li> </ul>
Manual Method Single pass	Both manual and scheduled wiping allow the file system to reuse marked disk space without having to wipe it first.
Multiple pass	Notes:
	"Single pass" is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>Highly confidential information should be wiped using only the Multiple pass method.</li> </ul>
Scheduled Method Single pass	Both manual and scheduled wiping allow the file system to reuse marked disk space without having to wipe it first.
Multiple pass	Notes:
	"Single pass" is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>Highly confidential information should be wiped using only the Multiple Pass method.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Scheduled wipes are initiated without displaying a user warning or confirmation message.</li> </ul>

## **Security Audit Log menu**

Menu item	Description
Export Log	Enables an authorized user to export the audit log
	Notes:
	<ul> <li>To export the audit log from the printer control panel, a flash drive must be attached to the printer.</li> </ul>
	• From the Embedded Web Server, the audit log can be downloaded to a computer.
Delete Log	Specifies whether audit logs are deleted
Yes	Note: "Yes" is the factory default setting.
No	

Menu item	Description
Configure Log	Specifies whether and how audit logs are created
Enable Audit No	Notes:
Yes Enable Remote Syslog	<ul> <li>Enable Audit determines if events are recorded in the secure audit log and remote syslog. No is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
No	<ul> <li>Enable Remote Syslog determines if logs are sent to a remote server. No is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
Yes Remote Syslog Facility	<ul> <li>Remote Syslog Facility determines the value used to send logs to the remote syslog server. 4 is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
0–23 Severity of events to log 0–7	<ul> <li>With the security audit log activated, the severity value of each event is recorded.</li> <li>4 is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>

### **Set Date and Time menu**

Menu item	Description
Current Date and Time	Shows the current date and time settings for the printer
Manually Set Date and Time [input date/time]	<ul> <li>Notes:</li> <li>Date and Time is set in YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM format.</li> <li>Manually setting the date and time sets Enable NTP to Off.</li> </ul>
Time Zone [list of time zones]	Note: GMT is the factory default setting.
Automatically observe DST On Off	<b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting. This uses the applicable Daylight Saving Time associated with the Time Zone setting.
Enable NTP On Off	Enables Network Time Protocol, which synchronizes the clocks of devices on a network  Notes:
	<ul> <li>On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>The setting is turned off if you manually set the date and time.</li> </ul>

# Settings menu

## **General Settings menu**

Menu item	Description
Display Language	Sets the language of the text appearing on the display
English	<b>Note:</b> Some languages may not be available for all printers.
Francais	
Deutsch	
Italiano	
Espanol	
Greek	
Dansk	
Norsk	
Nederlands	
Svenska	
Portuguese	
Suomi	
Russian	
Polski	
Magyar	
Turkce	
Cesky	
Simplified Chinese	
Traditional Chinese	
Korean	
Japanese	
Eco-Mode	Minimizes the use of energy, paper, or specialty media
Off	Notes:
Energy	
Energy/Paper Paper	<ul> <li>Off is the factory default setting. Off resets the printer to its factory default settings.</li> </ul>
ι αρει	<ul> <li>Energy minimizes the power used by the printer.</li> <li>Performance may be affected, but print quality is not.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Energy/Paper minimizes the use of power, paper and specialty media.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Paper minimizes the amount of paper and specialty media needed for a print job by duplexing each page. Performance may be affected, but print quality is not.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
Quiet Mode	Reduces the amount of noise produced by the printer
Off	Notes:
On	<ul> <li>Off is the factory default setting. This setting supports the performance specifications of your printer.</li> <li>On configures the printer to produce as little noise as</li> </ul>
	possible.
	<ul> <li>For optimal printing of color-rich documents, set Quiet Mode to Off.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Selecting Photo from the driver may disable Quiet Mode.</li> </ul>
Run Initial setup	Runs the setup wizard
Yes	Notes:
No	<ul> <li>Yes is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>After completing the setup wizard, the default setting becomes No.</li> </ul>
Keyboard	Specifies the language for the printer control panel keyboard
Keyboard Type	Notes:
English	
Francais	Keyboard Type specifies the language for the printer control     and blook and
Francais Canadien	panel keyboard.
Deutsch	<ul> <li>Custom Key 1 allows the user to assign a value to a custom key setting. A maximum of 6 characters is allowed.</li> </ul>
Italiano	key setting. A maximum of o characters is anowed.
Espanol	
Greek	
Dansk	
Norsk	
Nederlands	
Svenska	
Suomi	
Portuguese	
Russian	
Polski	
Swiss German	
Swiss French	
Korean	
Magyar Turkce	
Cesky	
Simplified Chinese	
Traditional Chinese	
Japanese	
Custom Key 1	

Menu item	Description
Paper Sizes	Specifies the default paper measurement
US Metric	Notes:
	<ul> <li>The initial setting is determined by your country or region selection in the initial setup wizard.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Changing this also changes the default setting for each input source in the Paper Size/Type menu.</li> </ul>
<b>Displayed Information</b> Left side	Specifies what is displayed on the upper left and right corners of the home screen
Left side Right side Custom Text [x] [x] Toner Fuser Transfer Module	For the Left side and Right side menus, select from the following options:  None  IP Address Hostname Contact Name Location Date/Time mDNS/DDNS Service Name Zero Configuration Name Custom Text [x] Model Name  For the [x] Toner, [x] Fuser, and Transfer Module menus, select from the following options: When to display Do not display Do not display Default Alternate Default [text entry] Alternate [text entry] Notes:  • IP Address is the factory default setting for Left side.
	Date/Time is the factory default setting for Right side.
	<ul> <li>"Do not display" is the factory default setting for "When to display."</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Default is the factory default setting for Message to Display.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
Displayed Information  Waste Toner Bottle Paper Jam Load Paper Service Errors	Lets you customize the displayed information for Waste Toner Bottle, Paper Jam, Load Paper, and Service Errors Choose from the following options:  Display  No  Yes  Message to Display  Default  Alternate  Default  [text entry]  Alternate  [text entry]  Notes:  No is the factory default setting for Display.  Default is the factory default setting for Message to Display.
Home screen customization Change Language Search Held Jobs Held Jobs USB Drive Profiles and Solutions Bookmarks Jobs by user Forms and Favorites Eco-Settings Showroom Change Background	Lets you add or remove icons and buttons that appear on the home screen  Available options for each button are:  Display  Do Not Display
Date Format  [MM-DD-YYYY]  [DD-MM-YYYY]  [YYYY-MM-DD]	Specifies the format for the printer date
Time Format  12 hour  24 hour	Specifies the format for the printer time  Note: 12 hour is the factory default setting.
Screen Brightness 20–100	Specifies the brightness of the printer control panel screen  Note: 100 is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Output Lighting	Sets the amount of light from the optional exit bin
Normal/Standby Mode	Notes:
Off Dim Bright Sleep Mode Off Dim Bright	<ul> <li>Dim is the factory default setting for Normal/Standby Mode if Eco-Mode is set to Energy or Energy/Paper.</li> <li>Bright is the factory default setting for Normal/Standby Mode if Eco-Mode is set to Off or Paper.</li> <li>Off is the factory default setting for Sleep Mode if Eco-Mode is set to Energy or Energy/Paper.</li> <li>Dim is the factory default setting for Sleep Mode if Eco-Mode is set to Off or Paper.</li> </ul>
Error Lighting On	Determines if indicator lights will blink when the printer encounters errors.
Off	Note: On is the factory default setting.
Audio Feedback  Button Feedback  On  Off  Volume  1–10	<ul> <li>Notes:</li> <li>On is the factory default setting for Button Feedback.</li> <li>5 is the factory default setting for Volume.</li> </ul>
Show Bookmarks	Determines whether the Bookmarks icon is displayed
Yes	Notes:
No	<ul> <li>Yes is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>The Bookmarks icon appears inside Held Jobs. If Show Bookmarks is set to No, then the Held Jobs icon is only displayed on the home screen if one or more held jobs exist on the printer.</li> </ul>
Web Page Refresh Rate 30–300	Specifies the number of seconds between Embedded Web Server refreshes
	<b>Note:</b> 120 seconds is the factory default setting.
Contact Name	Specifies a contact name for the printer
Location	Specifies the location of the printer
	<b>Note:</b> The location will be stored on the Embedded Web Server.

Menu item	Description
Alarms Alarm Control Cartridge Alarm	Sets an alarm to sound when the printer requires user intervention  Available options for each alarm type are:
Staple Alarm Hole Punch Alarm	Off Single Continuous
	Notes:
	<ul> <li>Single is the factory default setting for Alarm Control and Cartridge Alarm. Single sounds three quick beeps.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Off is the factory default setting for Staple Alarm and Hole Punch Alarm. Off means no alarm will sound.</li> </ul>
	Continuous repeats three beeps every 10 seconds.
Timeouts Standby Mode	Specifies the number of minutes of inactivity before the system enters a lower power state
Disabled 1–240	<b>Note:</b> 15 minutes is the factory default setting.
Timeouts Sleep Mode	Specifies the number of minutes of inactivity before some systems begin entering a minimum power state
Disabled	Notes:
1–240	• 30 minutes is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>A lower setting conserves more energy, but may require longer warm-up times.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Select the lowest setting if the printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Select a high setting if the printer is in constant use. Under most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to print with minimum warm-up time.</li> </ul>
	Sleep mode does not interact with Standby mode.
Timeouts Screen Timeout	Sets the amount of time (in seconds) the printer waits before returning to a ready state
15–300	<b>Note:</b> 30 seconds is the factory default setting.
Timeouts  Print Timeout  Disabled	Sets the amount of time (in seconds) the printer waits to receive an end-of-job message before canceling the remainder of the print job
1–255	Notes:
	90 seconds is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>When the timer expires, any partially printed page still in the printer is printed, and then the printer checks to see if any new print jobs are waiting.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Print Timeout is available only when using PCL emulation.</li> <li>This setting has no effect on PostScript emulation print jobs.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
Timeouts  Wait Timeout  Disabled	Sets the amount of time (in seconds) the printer waits for additional data before canceling a print job
	Notes:
15–65535	<ul> <li>40 seconds is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Wait Timeout is available only when the printer is using PostScript emulation. This setting has no effect on PCL emulation print jobs.</li> </ul>
Timeouts  Job Hold Timeout  5–255	Sets the amount of time (in seconds) the printer waits for user intervention before it holds jobs that require unavailable resources and continues to process other jobs in the print queue
	Notes:
	• 30 seconds is the factory default setting.
	• This menu appears only when a printer hard disk is installed.
Print Recovery  Auto Continue  Disabled	Lets the printer automatically continue printing from certain offline situations when not resolved within the specified time period
5–255	<b>Note:</b> Disabled is the factory default setting.
Print Recovery	Specifies whether the printer reprints jammed pages
Jam Recovery Auto On Off	Notes:
	<ul> <li>Auto is the factory default setting. The printer reprints jammed pages unless the memory required to hold the pages is needed for other printer tasks.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>On sets the printer to always reprint jammed pages.</li> </ul>
	Off sets the printer to never reprint jammed pages.
Print Recovery Page Protect	Lets the printer successfully print a page that may not have printed otherwise
Off	Notes:
On	<ul> <li>Off is the factory default setting. Off prints a partial page when there is not enough memory to print the whole page.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>On sets the printer to process the whole page so the entire page prints.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
Press Sleep Button Sleep	Determines how the printer, while in Idle state, reacts to a short press of the Sleep button
Hibernate	Notes:
Do Nothing	Sleep is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>Sleep or Hibernate sets the printer to operate at a lower power configuration.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>If the printer is in Sleep Mode, then the touch screen appears off and the Sleep button turns amber in color.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Touch anywhere on the touch screen or press a button on the printer control panel to exit Sleep Mode.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>If the printer is in Hibernate mode, then the touch screen is completely off and the Sleep button turns amber in color and is blinking.</li> </ul>
Press and Hold Sleep Button Do Nothing	Determines how the printer, while in Idle state, reacts to a long press of the Sleep button
Sleep	Notes:
Hibernate	Do Nothing is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>Sleep or Hibernate sets the printer to operate at a lower power configuration.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>If the printer is in Sleep Mode, then the touch screen appears off and the Sleep button turns amber in color.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Press and hold the Sleep button for 3 seconds or longer to enter Hibernate mode.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Touch anywhere on the touch screen or press a button on the printer control panel to exit Sleep Mode.</li> </ul>
Factory Defaults	Returns the printer settings to the factory default settings
Do Not Restore	Notes:
Restore Now	<ul> <li>Do Not Restore is the factory default setting. Do Not Restore keeps the user-defined settings.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Restore Now returns all printer settings to the factory default settings except Network/Ports menu settings. All downloads stored in RAM are deleted. Downloads stored in flash memory or on a printer hard disk are not affected.</li> </ul>

#### Flash Drive menu

Menu item	Description
Copies	Specifies a default number of copies for each print job
1–999	Note: 1 is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Paper Source Tray [x] MP Feeder Manual Paper Manuel Envelope	Sets a default paper source for all print jobs  Note: Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting.
Color Color Black Only	Generates color outputs  Note: Color is the factory default setting.
Collate On (1,2,1,2,1,2) Off (1,1,1,2,2,2)	Stacks the pages of a print job in sequence when printing multiple copies  Note: On is the factory default setting.
Sides (Duplex) 1 sided 2 sided	Specifies whether prints are on one side or on both sides of the paper  Note: 1 sided is the factory default setting.
Staple Off On	Specifies whether prints are stapled  Notes:  Off is the factory default setting.  This menu appears only when a stapler is installed.
Hole Punch Off On	<ul> <li>Specifies whether prints have punched holes</li> <li>Notes:</li> <li>Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>This menu appears only when a puncher is installed.</li> </ul>
Hole Punch Mode 2 holes 3 holes 4 holes	<ul> <li>Determines the type of punch finishing performed on a printed output</li> <li>Notes:</li> <li>3 holes is the US factory default setting. 4 holes is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>This menu appears only when a puncher is installed.</li> </ul>
<b>Duplex Binding</b> Long Edge Short Edge	Defines the way duplex pages are bound and how the printing on the back of the page is oriented in relation to the printing on the front of the page  Notes:  Long Edge is the factory default setting. Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape).  Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).
Paper Saver Orientation Auto Landscape Portrait	Specifies the orientation of a multiple-page document  Note: Auto is the factory default setting. The printer chooses between portrait and landscape.

Menu item	Description
Paper Saver Off 2-Up 3-Up 4-Up 6-Up 9-Up 12-Up 16-Up	Specifies that multiple-page images be printed on one side of a paper  Notes:  Off is the factory default setting.  The number selected is the number of page images that will print per side.
Paper Saver Border  None  Solid	Prints a border on each page image when using Paper Saver Border  Note: None is the factory default setting.
Paper Saver Ordering Horizontal Reverse Horizontal Reverse Vertical Vertical	<ul> <li>Specifies the positioning of multiple-page images when using Paper Saver Ordering</li> <li>Notes:</li> <li>Horizontal is the factory default setting.</li> <li>Positioning depends on the number of page images and whether they are in portrait or landscape orientation.</li> </ul>
Separator Sheets Off Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	<ul> <li>Specifies whether blank separator sheets are inserted</li> <li>Notes:</li> <li>Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>Between Copies inserts a blank sheet between each copy of a print job if Collation is set to On. If Collation is set to Off, then a blank page is inserted between each set of printed pages, such as after all page 1's and after all page 2's.</li> <li>Between Jobs inserts a blank sheet between print jobs.</li> <li>Between Pages inserts a blank sheet between each page of the print job. This setting is useful when printing transparencies or inserting blank pages in a document for notes.</li> </ul>
Separator Sheet Source Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specifies the paper source for separator sheets  Notes:  Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting.  From the Paper menu, Configure MP must be set to Cassette in order for Manual Feeder to appear as a menu setting.
Blank Pages Do Not Print Print	Specifies whether blank pages are inserted in a print job  Note: Do Not Print is the factory default setting.

### Setup menu

PS Emulation PCL Emulation  Notes:  PS Emulation is the factory default setting. PostScript emulation uses a PS interpreter for processing print jobs.  PCL Emulation uses a PCL interpreter for processing print jobs.  Setting a printer language default does not prevent a software program from sending print jobs that use another printer language.  Specifies if print jobs are removed from the print queue when they require unavailable printer options or custom settings. These print jobs are stored in a separate print queue, so other jobs print normally. When the missing information and/or options are obtained, the stored jobs print.  Notes:  Off is the factory default setting.  This menu item appears only if a non-read-only printer hard disk is installed. This requirement ensures that stored jobs are not deleted if the printer loses power.  Sets the logical and physical printable area  Normal  Fit to Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Whole Page allows the image at the boundary.  Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size.  Whole Page allows the image at the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL Se interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.	Menu item	Description
PCL Emulation  PS Emulation is the factory default setting. PostScript emulation uses a PS interpreter for processing print jobs.  PCL Emulation uses a PCL interpreter for processing print jobs.  Setting a printer language default does not prevent a software program from sending print jobs that use another printer language.  Specifies if print jobs are removed from the print queue when they require unavailable printer options or custom settings. These print jobs are stored in a separate print queue, so other jobs print normally. When the missing information and/or options are obtained, the stored jobs print.  Notes:  Off is the factory default setting.  This menu item appears only if a non-read-only printer hard disk is installed. This requirement ensures that stored jobs are not deleted if the printer loses power.  Print Area  Normal  Fit to Page  Whole Page  Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary.  Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size.  Whole Page allows the image to be moved into the printer clips the image at the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL Se interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using a PCL Se interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using a PCL Se interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using only the black print cartridge	Printer Language	Sets the default printer language
PS Emulation is the factory default setting. PostScript emulation uses a PS interpreter for processing print jobs.  PCL Emulation uses a PS interpreter for processing print jobs.  Setting a printer language default does not prevent a software program from sending print jobs that use another printer language.  Specifies if print jobs are removed from the print queue when they require unavailable printer options or custom settings. These print jobs are stored in a separate print queue, so other jobs print normally. When the missing information and/or options are obtained, the stored jobs print.  Notes:  Off is the factory default setting.  This menu item appears only if a non-read-only printer hard disk is installed. This requirement ensures that stored jobs are not deleted if the printer loses power.  Print Area  Normal  Fit to Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary.  Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size.  Whole Page allows the image at the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL Se interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using a PCL Se interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.  Black Only Mode  Off  Sets the printer to print text and graphics using only the black print cartridge		Notes:
Setting a printer language default does not prevent a software program from sending print jobs that use another printer language.  Specifies if print jobs are removed from the print queue when they require unavailable printer options or custom settings. These print jobs are stored in a separate print queue, so other jobs print normally. When the missing information and/or options are obtained, the stored jobs print.  Notes:  Off is the factory default setting.  This menu item appears only if a non-read-only printer hard disk is installed. This requirement ensures that stored jobs are not deleted if the printer loses power.  Print Area  Normal  Fit to Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Notes:  Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary.  Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size.  Whole Page allows the image to be moved into the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer and has no effect on pages printed using a PCL Se interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.  Sets the printer to print text and graphics using only the black print cartridge	PCL Emulation	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
program from sending print jobs that use another printer language.  Specifies if print jobs are removed from the print queue when they off prequire unavailable printer options or custom settings. These print jobs are stored in a separate print queue, so other jobs print normally. When the missing information and/or options are obtained, the stored jobs print.  Notes:  Off is the factory default setting.  This menu item appears only if a non-read-only printer hard disk is installed. This requirement ensures that stored jobs are not deleted if the printer loses power.  Print Area  Normal  Fit to Page  Whole Page  Notes:  Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary.  Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size.  Whole Page allows the image at the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.  Sets the printer to print text and graphics using only the black print cartridge		PCL Emulation uses a PCL interpreter for processing print jobs.
Off On  require unavailable printer options or custom settings. These print jobs are stored in a separate print queue, so other jobs print normally. When the missing information and/or options are obtained, the stored jobs print.  Notes:  Off is the factory default setting.  This menu item appears only if a non-read-only printer hard disk is installed. This requirement ensures that stored jobs are not deleted if the printer loses power.  Print Area  Normal  Fit to Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Prit to Page  Whole Page at the boundary.  Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size.  Whole Page allows the image at the Normal setting, but the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the Normal setting, but the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting boundary.  Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size.  Whole Page allows the image to be moved into the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL Se interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using a PCL Se interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.  Sets the printer to print text and graphics using only the black print cartridge		
Off is the factory default setting.  This menu item appears only if a non-read-only printer hard disk is installed. This requirement ensures that stored jobs are not deleted if the printer loses power.  Print Area  Normal  Fit to Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Sets the logical and physical printable area  Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary.  Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size.  Whole Page allows the image to be moved into the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL Se interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.  Black Only Mode  Off  Sets the printer to print text and graphics using only the black print cartridge		normally. When the missing information and/or options are
This menu item appears only if a non-read-only printer hard disk is installed. This requirement ensures that stored jobs are not deleted if the printer loses power.  Print Area  Normal  Fit to Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Print to Page  Whole Page  Sets the logical and physical printable area  Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary.  Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size.  Whole Page allows the image to be moved into the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.  Black Only Mode  Off		Notes:
disk is installed. This requirement ensures that stored jobs are not deleted if the printer loses power.  Print Area  Normal  Fit to Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Whole Page  Print to Page  Whole Page  Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary.  Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size.  Whole Page allows the image to be moved into the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.  Black Only Mode  Off  Off		Off is the factory default setting.
Normal Fit to Page Whole Page  • Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary.  • Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size.  • Whole Page allows the image to be moved into the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.  Black Only Mode Off  • Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.  Sets the printer to print text and graphics using only the black print cartridge		disk is installed. This requirement ensures that stored jobs are
Fit to Page  Whole Page  Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary.  Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size.  Whole Page allows the image to be moved into the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.  Black Only Mode  Off  Sets the printer to print text and graphics using only the black print cartridge	Print Area	Sets the logical and physical printable area
<ul> <li>Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary.</li> <li>Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size.</li> <li>Whole Page allows the image to be moved into the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.</li> <li>Black Only Mode Off</li> </ul>		Notes:
<ul> <li>Whole Page allows the image to be moved into the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.</li> <li>Black Only Mode Off</li> </ul> Sets the printer to print text and graphics using only the black print cartridge	=	
non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.  Black Only Mode Off  Sets the printer to print text and graphics using only the black print cartridge		Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size.
Off cartridge		non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or
	Black Only Mode Off	Sets the printer to print text and graphics using only the black print cartridge

Menu item	Description
Download Target	Sets the storage location for downloads
RAM	Notes:
Flash Disk	<ul> <li>RAM is the factory default setting. Storing downloads in RAM is temporary.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Storing downloads in flash memory or on a printer hard disk places them in permanent storage. Downloads remain in flash memory or on the printer hard disk even when the printer is turned off.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>This menu item appears only if a flash and/or disk option is installed.</li> </ul>
Resource Save Off On	Specifies how the printer handles temporary downloads, such as fonts and macros stored in RAM, when the printer receives a print job that requires more memory than is available
	Notes:
	<ul> <li>Off is the factory default setting. Off sets the printer to retain downloads only until memory is needed. Downloads are deleted in order to process print jobs.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>On sets the printer to retain downloads during language changes and printer resets. If the printer runs out of memory,</li> <li>38 Memory Full appears, but downloads are not deleted.</li> </ul>
Print All Order	Specifies the order in which held and confidential jobs are printed
Alphabetical	when Print All is selected
Oldest First Newest First	Notes:
Newestriist	<ul> <li>Alphabetical is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Print jobs always appear in alphabetical order on the printer control panel.</li> </ul>

### **Job Accounting menu**

**Note:** This menu item appears only if a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed. The printer hard disk cannot be read/write- or write-protected.

Menu item	Description
Job Accounting Log Off On	Determines if the printer creates a log of the print jobs it receives  Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Job Accounting Utilities	Lets you print and delete log files or export them to a flash drive
Accounting Log Frequency  Monthly  Weekly	Note: Monthly is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Log Action at End of Frequency None E-mail Current Log E-mail & Delete Current Log Post Current Log Post & Delete Current Log	Determines how the printer responds when the frequency threshold expires  Note: None is the factory default setting.
Disk Near Full Level 1–99 Off	Specifies the maximum size of the log file before the printer executes the Disk Near Full Action  Note: 5MB is the factory default setting.
Disk Near Full Action  None  E-mail Current Log  E-mail & Delete Current Log  E-mail & Delete Oldest Log  Post Current Log  Post & Delete Current Log  Post & Delete Oldest Log  Delete Current Log  Delete All Logs  Delete All But Current	Determines how the printer responds when the printer hard disk is nearly full  Notes:  None is the factory default setting.  The value defined in Disk Near Full Level determines when this action is triggered.
Disk Full Action  None  E-mail & Delete Current Log  E-mail & Delete Oldest Log  Post & Delete Current Log  Post & Delete Oldest Log  Delete Current Log  Delete Current Log  Delete All Logs  Delete All But Current	Determines how the printer responds when disk usage reaches the maximum limit (100MB)  Note: None is the factory default setting.
URL to Post Logs	Determines where the printer posts job accounting logs
E-mail Address to Send Logs	Specifies the e-mail address to which the device sends job accounting logs
Log File Prefix	<b>Note:</b> The current host name defined in the TCP/IP menu is used as the default log file prefix.

## Finishing menu

Menu item	Description
Sides (Duplex) 1 sided 2 sided	Specifies whether duplex (2-sided) printing is set as the default for all print jobs  Notes:
2 Sided	<ul> <li>1 sided is the factory default setting.</li> <li>You can set 2-sided printing from the software program. For Windows users, click File &gt; Print, and then click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup. For Macintosh users, choose File &gt; Print, and then adjust the settings from the print dialog and pop-up menus.</li> </ul>
Duplex Binding  Long Edge  Short Edge	Defines the way duplexed pages are bound and how the printing on the back of the page is oriented in relation to the printing on the front of the page  Notes:
	<ul> <li>Long Edge is the factory default setting. Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape).</li> <li>Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).</li> </ul>
<b>Copies</b> 1–999	Specifies the default number of copies for each print job  Note: 1 is the factory default setting.
Blank Pages  Do Not Print  Print	Specifies whether blank pages are inserted in a print job  Note: Do Not Print is the factory default setting.
Collate Off (1,1,1,2,2,2) On (1,2,1,2,1,2)	Stacks the pages of a print job in sequence when printing multiple copies  Notes:  Off is the factory default setting.  On stacks the print job in sequence.
Separator Sheets Off Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	<ul> <li>Specifies whether blank separator sheets are inserted</li> <li>Notes:</li> <li>Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>Between Copies inserts a blank sheet between each copy of a print job if Collate is set to On. If Collate is set to Off, then a blank page is inserted between each set of printed pages, such as after all page 1's and after all page 2's.</li> <li>Between Jobs inserts a blank sheet between print jobs.</li> <li>Between Pages inserts a blank sheet between each page of a print job. This setting is useful when printing transparencies or when inserting blank pages in a document.</li> </ul>
Separator Source Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specifies the paper source for separator sheets  Notes:  Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting.  From the Paper menu, Configure MP must be set to Cassette for Manual Feeder to appear as a menu setting.

Menu item	Description
Paper Saver Off 2-Up 3-Up 4-Up 6-Up 9-Up 12-Up 16-Up	Specifies that multiple-page images be printed on one side of a paper  Notes:  Off is the factory default setting.  The number selected is the number of page images that will print per side.
Paper Saver Ordering Horizontal Reverse Horizontal Reverse Vertical Vertical	Specifies the positioning of multiple-page images  Notes:  Horizontal is the factory default setting.  Positioning depends on the number of page images and whether they are in portrait or landscape orientation.
Paper Saver Orientation Auto Landscape Portrait	Specifies the orientation of a multiple-page document  Note: Auto is the factory default setting. The printer chooses between portrait and landscape.
Paper Saver Border  None  Solid	Prints a border on each page image  Note: None is the factory default setting.
Staple Job Off On	Specifies whether prints are stapled  Note: This menu appears only when a stapler is installed.
Hole Punch Off On	Specifies whether prints have punched holes  Note: This menu appears only when a puncher is installed.
Hole Punch Mode 2 holes 3 holes 4 holes	Determines the type of punch finishing performed on a print  Notes:  • 3 holes is the US factory default setting. 4 holes is the international factory default setting.  • This menu appears only when a puncher is installed.
Offset Pages  None Between Copies Between Jobs	<ul> <li>Offsets pages at certain instances</li> <li>Notes:</li> <li>None is the factory default setting.</li> <li>Between Copies offsets each copy of a print job if Collate is set to On. If Collate is set to Off, then each set of printed pages are offset, such as all page 1's and all page 2's.</li> <li>Between Jobs sets the same offset position for the entire print job regardless of the number of copies printed.</li> <li>This menu appears only when a stapler is installed.</li> </ul>

## **Quality menu**

Menu item	Description
Print Mode	Specifies whether images are printed in monochrome grayscale or in color
Color Black Only	Notes:
	Color is the factory default setting.
	The printer driver is capable of overriding this setting.
Color Correction	Adjusts the color output on the printed page
Auto	Notes:
Off Manual	<ul> <li>Auto is the factory default setting. Auto applies different color conversion tables to each object on the printed page.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Manual allows customization of color tables using the settings available from the Manual Color menu.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Due to the differences in additive and subtractive colors, certain colors that appear on computer screens are impossible to duplicate on a printed page.</li> </ul>
Print Resolution	Specifies the printed output resolution
4800 CQ	Notes:
1200 dpi	4800 CQ is the factory default setting.
	1200 dpi provides the highest resolution output, and increases gloss.
Toner Darkness	Lightens or darkens the printed output
1–5	Notes:
	4 is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>Selecting a smaller number can help conserve toner.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>If Print Mode is set to Black Only, a setting of 5 increases toner density and darkness for all print jobs.</li> </ul>
	• If Print Mode is set to Color, a setting of 5 is the same as a setting of 4.
Enhance Fine Lines Off	Enables a print mode preferable for files such as architectural drawings, maps, electrical circuit diagrams, and flow charts
On	Notes:
	Off is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>You can set this option from the software program. For Windows users, click File &gt;         Print, and then click Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup. For Macintosh         users, choose File &gt; Print, and then adjust the settings from the print dialog and         pop-up menus.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>To set this option using the Embedded Web Server, type the network printer IP address in a browser window.</li> </ul>
Color Saver Off	Reduces the amount of toner used for graphics and images. The amount of toner used for text is not reduced.
On	Notes:
	Off is the factory default setting.
	On overrides Toner Darkness settings.

Menu item	Description
RGB Brightness -6 to 6	Adjusts brightness in color outputs  Notes:  O is the factory default setting.
	This does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are used.
RGB Contrast 0–5	Adjusts contrast in color outputs  Notes:  • 0 is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>This does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are used.</li> </ul>
RGB Saturation 0-5	Adjusts saturation in color outputs  Notes:  • 0 is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>This does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are used.</li> </ul>
Color Balance Cyan -5 to 5 Magenta -5 to 5 Yellow -5 to 5 Black -5 to 5 Reset Defaults	Adjusts color in printed output by increasing or decreasing the amount of toner used for each color  Note: 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Samples  sRGB Display  sRGB Vivid  Display—True Black  Vivid  Off—RGB  US CMYK  Euro CMYK  Vivid CMYK  Off—CMYK	<ul> <li>Prints sample pages for each of the RGB and CMYK color conversion tables used in the printer</li> <li>Notes:</li> <li>Selecting any setting prints the sample.</li> <li>Color samples consist of a series of colored boxes along with the RGB or CMYK combination that creates the color observed. These pages can be used to help decide which combinations to use to get the desired printed output.</li> <li>From a browser window, type the IP address of the printer to access a complete list of color sample pages from the Embedded Web Server.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description	
Menu item  Manual Color  RGB Image  sRGB Display  Display—True Black  sRGB Vivid  Off  Vivid  RGB Text  sRGB Vivid  Off  Vivid  sRGB Display  Display—True Black  RGB Graphics  sRGB Vivid  Off  Vivid  sRGB Display  Display—True Black	Customizes the RGB color conversions  Notes:  • sRGB Display is the factory default setting for RGB Image. This applies a color conversion table to an output that matches the colors displayed on a computer monitor.  • sRGB Vivid is the factory default setting for RGB Text and RGB Graphics. sRGB Vivid applies a color table that increases saturation. This is preferred for business graphics and text.  • Vivid applies a color conversion table that produces brighter, more saturated colors.  • Display—True Black applies a color conversion table that uses only black toner for neutral gray colors.	
Display—True Black  Manual Color  CMYK Image  US CMYK  Euro CMYK  Vivid CMYK  Off  CMYK Text  US CMYK  Euro CMYK  Vivid CMYK  Vivid CMYK  Vivid CMYK  Vivid CMYK  Off  CMYK Graphics  US CMYK  Euro CMYK  Vivid CMYK  Off  CMYK  Off  CMYK  Off  CMYK  Off  CMYK  Off  CMYK  Off	Customizes the CMYK color conversions  Notes:  US CMYK is the US factory default setting. US CMYK applies a color conversion table that tries to produce output that matches SWOP color output.  Euro CMYK is the international factory default setting. Euro CMYK applies a color conversion table that tries to produce output that matches EuroScale color output.  Vivid CMYK increases color saturation for the US CMYK color conversion table.	
Spot Color Replacement  Color Adjust	Provides the capability to assign specific CMYK values to named spot colors  Initiates a recalibration of color conversion tables and allows the printer to make adjustments for color variations in output  Notes:  Calibrating starts when the menu is selected. Calibrating appears on the display until the process is finished.  Color variations in output sometimes result from changeable conditions such as room temperature and humidity. Color adjustments are made on printer algorithms. Color alignment is also recalibrated in this process.	

### **Utilities menu**

Menu item	Description	
Remove Held Jobs  Confidential  Held  Not Restored  All	<ul> <li>Removes confidential and held jobs from the printer hard disk</li> <li>Notes:</li> <li>Selecting a setting affects only print jobs that are resident in the printer. Bookmarks, print jobs on flash drives, and other types of held jobs are not affected.</li> <li>Not Restored removes all Print and Hold jobs that are <i>not</i> restored from the printer hard disk or memory.</li> </ul>	
Format Flash Yes No	Formats the flash memory  Warning—Potential Damage: Do not turn off the printer while the flash memory is being formatted.	
	<ul> <li>Notes:</li> <li>Yes deletes all data stored in flash memory.</li> <li>No cancels the format request.</li> <li>Flash memory refers to the memory added by installing a flash memory option card in the printer.</li> <li>A flash memory option card must be installed in the printer and operating properly for this menu item to be available.</li> <li>The flash memory option card must not be read/write- or write-protected.</li> </ul>	
Delete Downloads on Disk  Delete Now  Do Not Delete	Removes downloads from the printer hard disk, including all held jobs, buffered jobs, and parked jobs  Notes:  Delete Now configures the printer control panel to return to the originating screen after the deletion process is completed.  Do Not Delete sets the printer control panel to return to the main Utilities menu.	
Activate Hex Trace	Assists in isolating the source of a print job problem  Notes:  When activated, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation, and control codes are not executed.  To exit or deactivate Hex Trace, turn the printer off or reset the printer.	
Coverage Estimator Off On	Provides an estimate of the percentage coverage of toner on a page. The estimate is printed on a separate page at the end of each print job.  Note: Off is the factory default setting.	

#### **XPS** menu

Menu item	Description
Print Error Pages Off	Prints a page containing information on errors, including XML markup errors
On	<b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.

#### PDF menu

Menu item	Description
Scale to Fit	Scales page content to fit the selected paper size
No	Note: No is the factory default setting.
Yes	
Annotations	Prints annotations in a PDF
Do Not Print	<b>Note:</b> Do Not Print is the factory default setting.
Print	

## PostScript menu

Menu item	Description
Print PS Error Off On	Prints a page containing the PostScript error  Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Lock PS Startup Mode Off On	Enables users to disable the SysStart file  Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Font Priority  Resident  Flash/Disk	<ul> <li>Establishes the font search order</li> <li>Notes: <ul> <li>Resident is the factory default setting.</li> <li>This menu item is available only if a formatted flash memory option card or printer hard disk is installed and operating properly.</li> <li>Make sure the flash memory option or printer hard disk is not read/write-, write-, or password-protected.</li> <li>Job Buffer Size must not be set to 100%.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Image Smoothing Off On	Enhances the contrast and sharpness of low-resolution images and smooths their color transitions  Notes:  Off is the factory default setting.  Image Smoothing has no effect on images that are 300 dpi or higher in resolution.

### **PCL Emul menu**

Menu item	Description
Font Source Resident	Specifies the set of fonts used by the Font Name menu item  Notes:
Disk Download Flash	<ul> <li>Resident is the factory default setting. It shows the factory default set of fonts downloaded in RAM.</li> </ul>
All	<ul> <li>Flash and Disk settings show all fonts resident in that option. Make sure the flash option is properly formatted and is not read/write-, or password-protected.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Download shows all the fonts downloaded in RAM.</li> </ul>
	All shows all fonts available to any option.
Font Name	Identifies a specific font and where it is stored
RO Courier	<b>Note:</b> RO Courier is the factory default setting. The RO Courier format shows the font name, font ID, and storage location in the printer. The font source abbreviation is R for Resident, F for Flash, K for Disk, and D for Download.
Symbol Set	Specifies the symbol set for each font name
10U PC-8	Notes:
12U PC-850	<ul> <li>10U PC-8 is the US factory default setting. 12U PC-850 is the international factory default setting.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>A symbol set is a set of alphabetical and numeric characters, punctuation, and special symbols. Symbol sets support the different languages or specific programs such as math symbols for scientific text. Only the supported symbol sets are shown.</li> </ul>
PCL Emulation Settings	Changes the point size for scalable typographic fonts
Point Size	Notes:
1.00-1008.00	12 is the factory default setting.
	<ul> <li>Point Size refers to the height of the characters in the font. One point equals approximately 1/72 of an inch.</li> </ul>
	Point sizes can be increased or decreased in 0.25-point increments.
PCL Emulation Settings	Specifies the font pitch for scalable monospaced fonts
Pitch	Notes:
0.08–100	10 is the factory default setting.
	Pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters per inch (cpi).
	Pitch can be increased or decreased in 0.01-cpi increments.
	<ul> <li>For non-scalable monospaced fonts, the pitch appears on the display but cannot be changed.</li> </ul>
PCL Emulation Settings	Specifies the orientation of text and graphics on a page
Orientation	Notes:
Portrait	Portrait is the factory default setting.
Landscape	<ul> <li>Portrait is the factory default setting.</li> <li>Portrait prints text and graphics parallel to the short edge of the page.</li> </ul>
	Landscape prints text and graphics parallel to the long edge of the page.

Menu item	Description
PCL Emulation Settings Lines per Page 1–255	<ul> <li>Specifies the number of lines that print on each page</li> <li>Notes:</li> <li>60 is the US factory default setting. 64 is the international default setting.</li> <li>The printer sets the amount of space between each line based on the Lines per Page, Paper Size, and Orientation settings. Select the desired Paper Size and Orientation before setting Lines per Page.</li> </ul>
PCL Emulation Settings A4 Width 198 mm 203 mm	Sets the printer to print on A4-size paper  Notes:  198 mm is the factory default setting.  The 203-mm setting sets the width of the page to allow the printing of eighty 10-pitch characters.
PCL Emulation Settings Auto CR after LF Off On	Specifies whether the printer automatically performs a carriage return (CR) after a line feed (LF) control command  Note: Off is the factory default setting.
PCL Emulation Settings Auto LF after CR Off On	Specifies whether the printer automatically performs a line feed (LF) after a carriage return (CR) control command  Note: Off is the factory default setting.
Tray Renumber  Assign MP Feeder  Off  None  0–199  Assign Tray [x]  Off  None  0–199  Assign Manual Paper  Off  None  0–199  Assign Manual Env  Off  None  0–199	Configures the printer to work with printer software or programs that use different source assignments for trays, drawers, and feeders  Notes:  Off is the factory default setting.  None ignores the Select Paper Feed command. This selection is displayed only when it is selected by the PCL 5e interpreter.  O-199 allows a custom setting to be assigned.

Menu item	Description
Tray Renumber	Displays the factory default setting assigned to each tray, drawer, or feeder
View Factory Defaults	
MPF Default = 8	
T1 Default = 1	
T2 Default = 4	
T3 Default = 5	
T4 Default = 20	
T5 Default = 21	
Env Default = 6	
MPaper Default = 2	
MEnv Default = 3	
Tray Renumber	Returns all tray, drawer, and feeder assignments to the factory default settings
Restore Defaults	
Yes	
No	

#### **HTML** menu

Menu Item		Description
Font Name	Joanna MT	Sets the default font for HTML documents
Albertus MT	Letter Gothic	<b>Note:</b> The Times font is used in HTML documents that do not
Antique Olive	Lubalin Graph	specify a font.
Apple Chancery	Marigold	
Arial MT	MonaLisa Recut	
Avant Garde	Monaco	
Bodoni	New CenturySbk	
Bookman	New York	
Chicago	Optima	
Clarendon	Oxford	
Cooper Black	Palatino	
Copperplate	StempelGaramond	
Coronet	Taffy	
Courier	Times	
Eurostile	TimesNewRoman	
Garamond	Univers	
Geneva	Zapf Chancery	
Gill Sans	NewSansMTCS	
Goudy	NewSansMTCT	
Helvetica	New SansMTJA	
Hoefler Text	NewSansMTKO	
Intl CG Times		
Intl Courier		
Intl Univers		

Menu item	Description	
Font Size	Sets the default font size for HTML documents	
1–255 pt	Notes:	
	12 pt is the factory default setting.	
	Font size can be increased in 1-point increments.	
Scale	Scales the default font for HTML documents	
1–400%	Notes:	
	100% is the factory default setting.	
	Scaling can be increased in 1% increments.	
Orientation	Sets the page orientation for HTML documents	
Portrait	Note: Portrait is the factory default setting.	
Landscape		

Menu item	Description
Margin Size	Sets the page margin for HTML documents
8–255 mm	Notes:
	• 19 mm is the factory default setting.
	Margin size can be increased in 1-mm increments.
Backgrounds	Specifies whether to print backgrounds on HTML documents
Print	<b>Note:</b> Print is the factory default setting.
Do Not Print	

### Image menu

Menu item	Description
Auto Fit On Off  Invert Off On	Selects the optimal paper size, scaling, and orientation  Note: On is the factory default setting. It overrides scaling and orientation settings for some images.  Inverts bi-tonal monochrome images  Notes:  Off is the factory default setting.
Scaling  Best Fit  Anchor Center  Fit Height/Width  Fit Height  Fit Width  Anchor Top Left	<ul> <li>This setting does not apply to GIF or JPEG images.</li> <li>Scales the image to fit the selected paper size</li> <li>Notes:</li> <li>Best Fit is the factory default setting.</li> <li>When Auto Fit is set to On, Scaling is automatically set to Best Fit.</li> </ul>
Orientation  Portrait  Landscape  Rev Portrait  Rev Landscape	Sets the image orientation  Note: Portrait is the factory default setting.

# Help menu

The Help menu consists of a series of Help pages that are stored in the printer as PDF files. They contain information about using the printer and performing printing tasks.

English, French, German, and Spanish translations are stored in the printer. Other translations are available on the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com**.

Menu item	Description
Print All Guides	Prints all the guides
Color Quality	Provides information about adjusting and customizing color printing
Print Quality	Provides information about solving print quality issues
Printing Guide	Provides information about loading paper and other speciality media
Media Guide	Provides a list of the paper sizes supported in trays, drawers, and feeders
Print Defects Guide	Provides help in determining the printer part causing a repetitive defect
Menu Map	Provides a list of the printer control panel menus and settings
Information Guide	Provides help in locating additional information
Connection Guide	Provides information about connecting the printer locally (USB) or to a network
Moving Guide	Provides instructions for safely moving the printer
Supplies Guide	Provides part numbers for ordering supplies

# Securing the printer hard disk and other installed memory

### Statement of Volatility

Your printer contains various types of memory that are capable of storing device and network settings, information from embedded solutions, and user data. The types of memory—along with the types of data stored by each—are described below.

- **Volatile memory**—Your device utilizes standard *Random Access Memory* (RAM) to temporarily buffer user data during simple print and copy jobs.
- Non-volatile memory—Your device may utilize two forms of non-volatile memory: EEPROM and NAND (flash memory). Both types are used to store the operating system, device settings, network information, scanner and bookmark settings, and embedded solutions.
- Hard disk memory—Some devices have a hard disk drive installed. The printer hard disk is designed for
  device-specific functionality and cannot be used for long term storage for data that is not print-related. The hard
  disk does not provide the capability for users to extract information, create folders, create disk or network file
  shares, or FTP information directly from a client device. The hard disk can retain buffered user data from complex
  scan, print, copy, and fax jobs, as well as form data, and font data.

There are several circumstances under which you might wish to erase the contents of the memory devices installed in your printer. A partial list includes:

- The printer is being decommissioned
- The printer hard drive is being replaced
- The printer is being moved to a different department or location
- The printer is being serviced by someone from outside your organization
- The printer is being removed from your premises for service

### Disposing of a hard drive

**Note:** Not all printers have a hard disk installed.

In high-security environments, it may be necessary to take additional steps to ensure that confidential data stored on the printer hard disk cannot be accessed once the printer—or its hard disk—is removed from your premises. While most data can be erased electronically, you may want to consider one or more of the following actions before disposing of a printer or hard disk:

- Degaussing—Flushes the hard drive with a magnetic field that erases stored data
- · Crushing—Physically compresses the hard disk to break component parts and render them unreadable
- Milling—Physically shreds the hard disk into small metal bits

**Note:** While most data can be erased electronically, the only way to guarantee that all data is completely erased is to physically destroy each memory device on which data could have been stored.

### **Erasing volatile memory**

The volatile memory (RAM) installed on your printer requires a power source to retain information. To erase the buffered data, simply power down the device.

### **Erasing non-volatile memory**

There are several methods available for erasing data stored in non-volatile memory, depending on the type of memory device installed, and the type of data stored by that device. For information about how to erase each type of information, see the *Embedded Web Server Administrator Guide*.

- Individual settings—Erase individual printer settings using the printer control panel or the printer Embedded Web Server.
- Device and network settings—Erase device and network settings and restore factory defaults by resetting the NVRAM using the printer Config menu.
- **Security settings**—Restore factory defaults or erase security settings by selecting a behavior for the Security Reset Jumper in the Embedded Web Server, and then moving a hardware jumper located on the motherboard.
- Fax data—Erase fax settings and data by resetting the NVRAM using the printer Config menu. Use this when the printer does not contain a hard disk or if you have chosen NAND for fax storage.

**Note:** If the printer hard disk is partitioned for fax storage, then you must reformat that partition to erase fax data and settings.

• **Embedded solutions**—Erase information and settings associated with embedded solutions by uninstalling the solutions or applications, or by restoring factory defaults using the printer Config menu.

#### Using the printer control panel

- **1** Turn the printer off.
- 2 Hold down and 6 while turning the printer on. Release the buttons only when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears. Once the printer is fully powered up, the touch screen displays a list of functions, instead of the standard home screen icons such as Copy or Fax.

3 Touch Wipe All Settings.

The printer will reboot several times during this process.

**Note:** Wipe All Settings securely removes device settings, solutions, jobs, faxes, and passwords on the printer.

4 Touch Back, and then Exit Config Menu.

The printer will power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

### **Erasing printer hard disk memory**

Note: Not all printers have a hard disk installed.

Configuring Disk Wiping in the printer menus enables you to remove residual confidential material left by scan, print, copy, and fax jobs, by securely overwriting files that have been marked for deletion.

#### **Using the Embedded Web Server**

1 From the Embedded Web Server, click Settings > Security > Disk Wiping.

**Note:** Printers without a hard disk will not display Disk Wiping in the Security menu.

- **2** For Wiping Mode, select one of the following:
  - Auto—Use this to automatically wipe data following each use (can increase the time between jobs).
  - Manual—Use this to set up a schedule for disk wiping.
- 3 Click Submit.
- 4 From the Security menu, click Disk Wiping.
- 5 If you have enabled Manual mode and wish to set up a schedule for disk wiping, click Scheduled Disk Wiping.

#### **Notes:**

- Scheduled Disk Wiping will not be displayed until after Manual mode has been selected and submitted.
- If you do not wish to schedule disk wiping, you can skip steps 5 and 6.
- **6** Use the Time and Day(s) options to designate when disk wiping should occur, and then click **Add**. Repeat as needed to schedule additional times for disk wiping. When finished, use the browser Back button to return to the Disk Wiping setup screen.

**Note:** Disk wiping can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which time the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.

- **7** From the Disk Wiping settings screen, select one of the following for each method of disk wiping (Automatic, Manual, and Scheduled):
  - Single Pass This lets you overwrite the printer hard disk in a single pass with a repeating bit pattern.
  - Multi-pass—This lets you overwrite the printer hard disk with random bit patterns several times, followed by a verification pass. A secure overwrite is compliant with the DoD 5220.22-M standard for securely erasing data from a hard disk. Highly confidential information should be wiped using this method.
- 8 Click Submit.

### Using the printer control panel

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Hold down and 6 wo while turning the printer on. It takes approximately a minute to boot into the Configuration menu.
  - Once the printer is fully powered up, the touch screen should display a list of functions, instead of standard home screen icons such as Copy or Fax.
- **3** Release the buttons when the screen with the progress bar appears. The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears.

- 4 Touch Wipe Disk, and then touch one of the following:
  - Wipe disk (fast)—This lets you overwrite the disk with all zeroes in a single pass.
  - Wipe disk (secure)—This lets you overwrite the disk with random bit patterns several times, followed by a verification pass. A secure overwrite is compliant with the DoD 5220.22-M standard for securely erasing data from a hard disk. Highly confidential information should be wiped using this method.
- 5 Touch Yes to proceed with disk wiping. A status bar will indicate the progress of the disk wiping task.

**Note:** Disk wiping can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.

6 Touch Back, and then Exit Config Menu.

The printer will power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

### Configuring printer hard disk encryption

Note: Your printer may not have a hard disk installed.

Enabling hard disk encryption helps prevent the loss of sensitive data in the event your printer or its hard disk is stolen.

#### **Using the Embedded Web Server**

1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings** > **Security** > **Disk Encryption**.

**Note:** Disk Encryption appears in the Security Menu only when a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed.

**2** From the Disk encryption menu, select **Enable**.

#### **Notes:**

- Enabling disk encryption will erase the content of the printer hard disk.
- Disk encryption can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.
- 3 Click Submit.

### Using the printer control panel

- **1** Turn off the printer.
- 2 Hold down and 6 while turning the printer on. Release the buttons only when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears. Once the printer is fully powered up, the touch screen displays a list of functions, instead of standard home screen icons such as Copy or Fax.

3 Touch Disk Encryption > Enable.

**Note:** Enabling disk encryption will erase the contents of the printer hard disk.

4 Touch Yes to proceed with disk wiping.

A status bar will indicate the progress of the disk wiping task. After the disk has been encrypted, the printer will return to the Enable/Disable screen.

#### Notes:

- Do not turn off the printer during the encryption process. Doing so may result in loss of data.
- Disk encryption can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.
- 5 Touch Back, and then Exit Config Menu.

The printer will power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

# Maintaining the printer

Periodically, certain tasks are required to maintain optimum print quality.

### Cleaning the exterior of the printer

1 Make sure that the printer is turned off and unplugged from the wall outlet.



**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** To avoid the risk of electric shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet and disconnect all cables to the printer before proceeding.

- **2** Remove paper from the standard exit bin.
- 3 Dampen a clean, lint-free cloth with water.

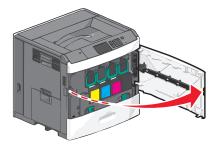
**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not use household cleaners or detergents, as they may damage the finish of the printer.

- **4** Wipe only the outside of the printer, making sure to include the standard exit bin.
  - Warning—Potential Damage: Using a damp cloth to clean the interior may cause damage to your printer.
- 5 Make sure the paper support and standard exit bin are dry before beginning a new print job.

# Cleaning the printhead lenses

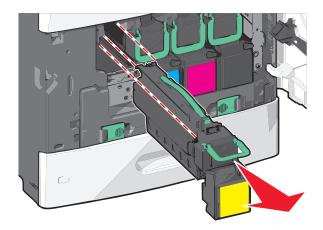
Clean the printhead lenses when you encounter print quality problems.

**1** Open the front door.

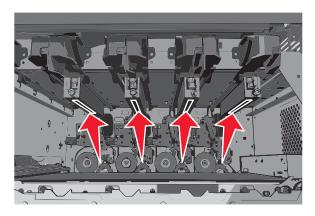


2 Remove all print cartridges.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the shiny area on the photoconductor drum. Doing so can damage the photoconductor.



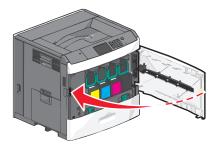
**3** Locate the four printhead lenses.



4 Clean the lenses using compressed air.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the printhead lenses.

- **5** Reinstall the print cartridges.
- **6** Close the front door.



# **Storing supplies**

Choose a cool, clean storage area for the printer supplies. Store supplies right side up in their original packing until you are ready to use them.

Do not expose supplies to:

- Direct sunlight
- Temperatures above 35°C (95°F)

- High humidity above 80%
- Salty air
- Corrosive gases
- Heavy dust

### Checking the status of supplies

A message appears on the display when a replacement supply item is needed or when maintenance is required.

#### Checking the status of supplies from the printer control panel

From the home screen, touch Status/Supplies > View Supplies.

#### Checking the status of supplies from a network computer

**Note:** The computer must be connected to the same network as the printer.

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- 2 Click Device Status.

The Device Status page appears, displaying a summary of supply levels.

### **Ordering supplies**

To order supplies in the U.S., contact Lexmark at 1-800-539-6275 for information about Lexmark authorized supplies dealers in your area. In other countries or regions, visit the Lexmark Web Site at **www.lexmark.com** or contact the place where you purchased the printer.

Note: All life estimates for printer supplies assume printing on letter- or A4-size plain paper.

### Ordering a print cartridge

When 88 [color] cartridge low or 88 [color] cartridge nearly low appears, order a new cartridge.

Estimated cartridge yield is based on the ISO/IEC 19798 standard. Extremely low print coverage (less than 1.25%) for extended periods of time may negatively affect actual yield and may cause cartridge parts to fail prior to exhaustion of toner.

#### Recommended print cartridge and part number

Part name	Lexmark Return Program Cartridge	Regular cartridge	
Cyan Print Cartridge	C792A1CG	C792A2CG	
Cyan Extra High Yield Print Cartridge	C792X1CG	C792X2CG	
Magenta Print Cartridge	C792A1MG	C792A2MG	
Magenta Extra High Yield Print Cartridge	C792X1MG	C792X2MG	
Yellow Print Cartridge	C792A1YG	C792A2YG	
Yellow Extra High Yield Print Cartridge	C792X1YG	C792X2YG	
Black Print Cartridge	C792A1KG	C792A2KG	
Black Extra High Yield Print Cartridge	C792X1KG	C792X2KG	

### Ordering a fuser or a transfer module

When 80 Fuser Life Warning or 83 Transfer Module Life Warning appears, order a replacement fuser or a transfer module.

When 80 Replace Fuser or 83 Replace Transfer Module appears, install the new fuser or the new transfer module. For installation information, see the documentation that came with the part.

Part name	Part number
Fuser	40X7102 (100 volts)
	40X7100 (115 volts)
	40X7101 (230 volts)
Transfer Module	40X7103

#### Ordering a waste toner bottle

When 82 Waste toner bottle nearly full appears, order a replacement waste toner bottle.

When 82 Replace waste toner bottle appears, replace the waste toner bottle.

Note: Waste toner bottle reuse is not recommended.

Part name	Part number
Waste toner bottle	C792X77G

### Ordering staple cartridges

When **Staples** Low or **Staples** Empty appears, order the specified staple cartridge.

For more information, see the illustrations inside the stapler door.

Part name	Part number
Staple Cartridges-3 pack	25A0013
(Since a pack contains 5,000 staples, a 3-pack contains 15,000 staples.)	

### Ordering a cleaning kit

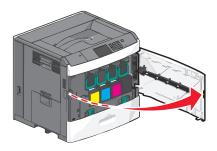
Use the wet and dry wipes from the cleaning kit to clean the touch screen.

Part name	Part number
Cleaning kit (wet and dry wipes)	40X0392

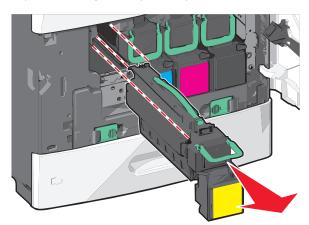
# **Replacing supplies**

### Replacing a print cartridge

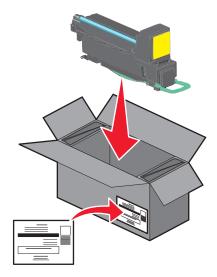
**1** Open the front door.



2 Lift the green handle and pull the print cartridge. Grasp the top handle and lift the cartridge out of the machine.

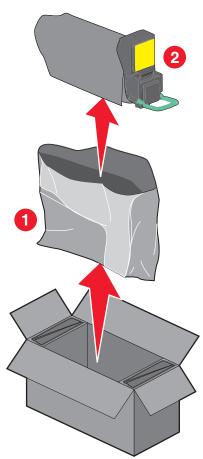


**3** Place the old cartridge in the replacement cartridge shipping box, and then attach the return label to the box for shipping.

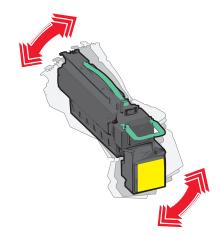


4 Unpack a new print cartridge.

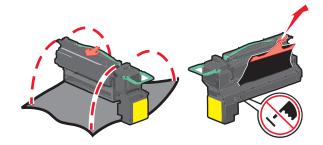
**Warning—Potential Damage:** Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.



**5** Shake the new cartridge front-to-back and side-to-side to evenly distribute the toner.

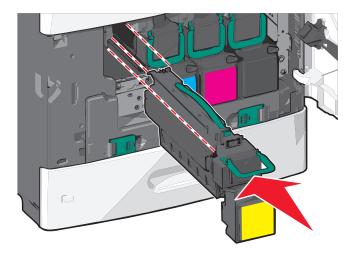


**6** Remove the red packing strip from the new cartridge.

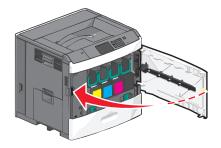


7 Insert the new cartridge into the printer, and then push the green handle back in place.

**Note:** Make sure the cartridge is fully pushed in.



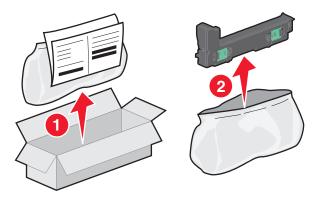
**8** Close the front door.



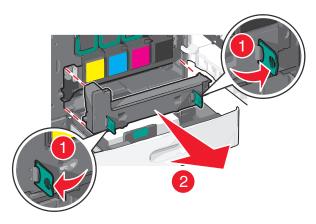
### Replacing the waste toner bottle

Replace the waste toner bottle when 82.xx Replace waste toner bottle appears. The printer will not continue printing until the waste toner bottle is replaced.

1 Remove the replacement waste toner bottle from its shipping box, and then unpack it.

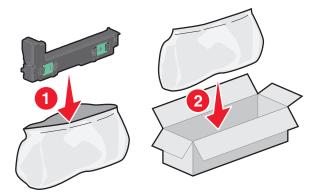


- **2** Open the printer front door, and then open tray 1.
- **3** Pull the green tabs sideways, and then grasp and pull the tabs with both hands to remove the waste toner bottle.

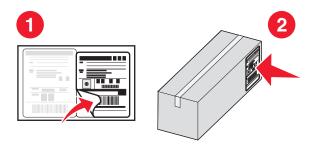


**4** Place the waste toner bottle in the recycling bag.

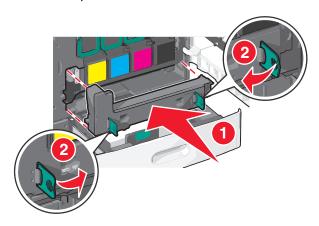
**5** Place the bag into the shipping box you removed the replacement part from.



**6** Peel the recycling label off, and place it on the shipping box.



7 Insert the new waste toner bottle into the printer.



8 Close tray 1, and then close the front door.

## Moving the printer

### Before moving the printer



**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.



**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Before moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Turn the printer off using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer before moving it.
- Lift the printer off of the optional drawer and set it aside instead of trying to lift the drawer and printer at the same time.

Note: Use the handholds located on both sides of the printer to lift it off the optional drawer.

Warning—Potential Damage: Damage to the printer caused by improper moving is not covered by the printer warranty.

#### Moving the printer to another location

The printer and options can be safely moved to another location by following these precautions:

- Any cart used to move the printer must have a surface able to support the full footprint of the printer. Any cart used to move the options must have a surface able to support the dimensions of the options.
- Keep the printer in an upright position.
- Avoid severe jarring movements.

#### Shipping the printer

When shipping the printer, use the original packaging or call the place of purchase for a relocation kit.

# **Administrative support**

### Finding advanced networking and administrator information

This chapter covers basic administrative support tasks using the Embedded Web Server. For more advanced system support tasks, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software and Documentation* CD and the *Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide* on the Lexmark Web site at http://support.lexmark.com.

### **Using the Embedded Web Server**

If the printer is installed on a network, then the Embedded Web Server is available for a range of functions including:

- Viewing a virtual display of the printer control panel
- Checking the status of the printer supplies
- Configuring printer settings
- Configuring network settings
- Viewing reports

To access the Embedded Web Server for your printer:

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

#### Notes:

- If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page, and then locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Embedded Web Server correctly.
- 2 Press Enter.

### Checking the virtual display

1 Open an Embedded Web Server associated with your printer.

Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- **2** Check the virtual display that appears in the top left corner of the screen.

The virtual display works as an actual display would work on a printer control panel, showing printer messages.

### Checking the status of the printer

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

#### 2 Click Device Status.

The device status shows the following:

- Paper tray settings
- Level of toner in the print cartridge
- · Percentage of life remaining in the maintenance kit
- Capacity measurements of certain printer parts

### Setting up e-mail alerts

Configure the printer to send you e-mail alerts when the supplies are getting low or when the paper needs to be changed or added, or when there is a paper jam.

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- 2 Click Settings.
- 3 Under Other Settings, click E-mail Alert Setup.
- **4** Select the items for notification, and type the e-mail addresses.
- 5 Click Submit.

**Note:** For information on setting up the e-mail server, contact your system support person.

### Viewing reports

You can view some reports from the Embedded Web Server. These reports are useful for assessing the status of the printer, the network, and supplies.

To view reports from a network printer:

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- **2** Click **Reports**, and then click the type of report you want to view.

## **Restoring factory default settings**

If you want to retain a list of the current menu settings for reference, then print a menu settings page before restoring the factory default settings.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Restoring factory defaults returns most printer settings to the original factory default settings. Exceptions include the display language, custom sizes and messages, and network/port menu settings. All downloads stored in RAM are deleted. Downloads stored in flash memory or on a printer hard disk are not affected.

From the home screen, navigate to:

Settings > General Settings > Factory Defaults > Restore Now >

# **Clearing jams**

By carefully selecting papers and specialty media and loading it properly, you should be able to avoid most jams. For more information, see "Avoiding jams" on page 163. If jams do occur, follow the steps outlined in this chapter.

To resolve the jam messages, you must clear the entire paper path, and touch **Continue** to clear the message and resume printing. The printer prints a new copy of the page that jammed if Jam Recovery is set to On or Auto; however, the Auto setting does not guarantee the page will print.

**Note:** Jam recovery is set to Auto by default. The printer reprints jammed pages unless the memory required to hold the pages is needed for other printer tasks.

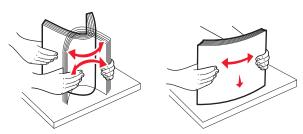
### **Avoiding jams**

#### Paper tray recommendations

- Make sure the paper lies flat in the tray.
- Do not remove a tray while the printer is printing.
- Do not load a tray while the printer is printing. Load it prior to printing, or wait for a prompt to load it.
- Do not load too much paper. Make sure the stack height does not exceed the indicated maximum height.
- Make sure the guides in the tray or the multipurpose feeder are properly positioned and are not pressing too tightly against the paper or envelopes.
- Push the tray in firmly after loading paper.

#### **Paper recommendations**

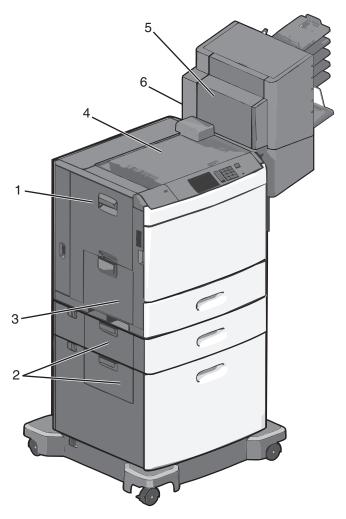
- Use only recommended paper or specialty media.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, bent, or curled paper.
- Flex and straighten paper before loading it.



- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, weights, or types in the same stack.
- Make sure all sizes and types are set correctly in the printer control panel menus.
- Store paper per manufacturer recommendations.

### **Understanding jam numbers and locations**

When a jam occurs, a message indicating the jam location appears on the display. To resolve any paper jam message, you must clear all jammed paper from the paper path.



Area	Jam numbers	What to do	
1	200-239	Open side door, and then remove the jammed paper.	
2	24x	Open side door of the specified tray, and then remove the jammed paper.	
3	250	Remove all paper from the multipurpose feeder, and then remove the jammed paper.	
4	400-403, 460-461	Open the Horizontal Transport Unit (HTU) door, and then remove the jammed paper.	
5	431-458	Push the button to slide the finisher or mailbox to the right, open the finisher or mailbox door, and then remove the jammed paper.	
6	455	Open staple door, remove the staple cartridge, and then remove the jammed staple.	

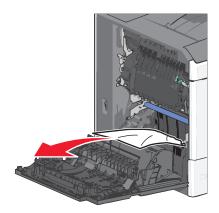
### 200 paper jam

1 Open the side door of the printer.



**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.



Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

- **3** Close the side door of the printer.
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch Continue, jam cleared.

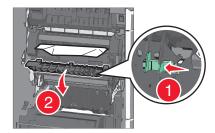
### 201 paper jam

**1** Open the side door of the printer.



**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

- 2 Determine where the jam is located, and then remove it:
  - **a** If paper is inside the fuser unit, then open the fuser access door.



**b** Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the center of the fuser unit. Doing so will damage the fuser.

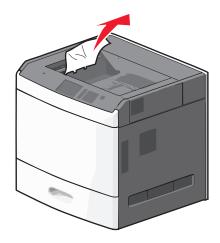
Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

- **3** Close the side door of the printer.
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch Continue, jam cleared.

### **202–203** paper jams

If paper is visible in the standard exit bin, then firmly grasp the paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



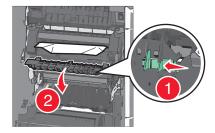
#### Paper jam in the fuser

**1** Open the side door of the printer.



**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 If paper is visible inside the fuser unit, then open the fuser access door.



3 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the center of the fuser unit. Doing so will damage the fuser.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

4 Close the side door.

### Paper jam under the fuser

**1** Open the side door of the printer.



**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 If paper is visible under the fuser, then firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

- **3** Close the side door of the printer.
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch Continue, jam cleared.

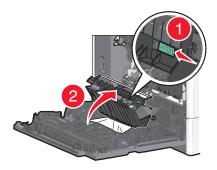
# 230 paper jam

**1** Open the side door of the printer.



**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 Slide the latch to open the duplex cover.



**3** Grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- **4** Close the duplex cover.
- **5** Close the side door of the printer.
- 6 From the printer control panel, touch Continue, jam cleared.

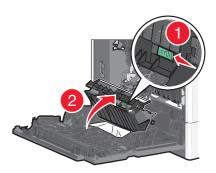
### 231-239 paper jams

1 Open the side door of the printer.



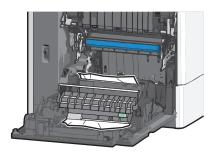
**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

**2** Slide the latch to open the duplex cover.



**3** Grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- **4** Close the duplex cover.
- **5** Close the side door of the printer.
- 6 From the printer control panel, touch Continue, jam cleared.

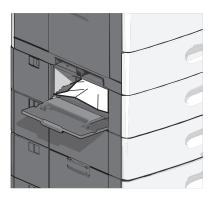
## 24x paper jam

### Paper jam in Tray 1

- 1 Open the side door.
- **2** Grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.
- **3** Close the side door.
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch Continue, jam cleared.

### Paper jam in the optional trays

- **1** Open the side door of the specified optional tray.
- 2 Grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.



- **3** Close the side door.
- **4** From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

# 250 paper jam

1 Push the paper pick tab, and then remove all paper from the multipurpose feeder.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Pulling the paper out, without pushing the paper pick tab first, may cause the paper pick tab to break.

2 Grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

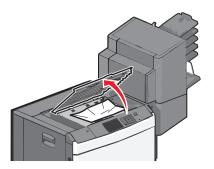


Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

- **3** Reload paper into the multipurpose feeder, and then adjust the paper guides.
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch Continue, jam cleared.

## 400-403 and 460-461 paper jams

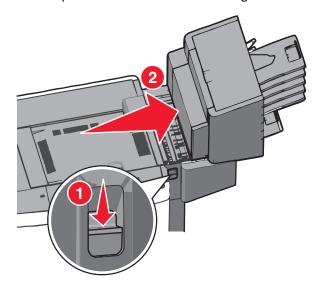
1 Open the paper transport unit door.



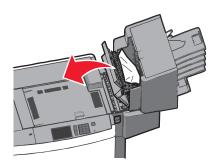
- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.
  - Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.
- **3** Close the paper transport unit door.
- **4** From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

## 431-454, and 456-458 paper jams

1 Push the button, and then slide the output finisher or mailbox to the right.



**2** Open the finisher or mailbox access door.



**3** Grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

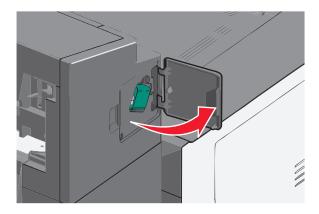
**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

- 4 Close the finisher or mailbox access door.
- **5** Slide the finisher or mailbox to the left until it *clicks* in place.
- **6** From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

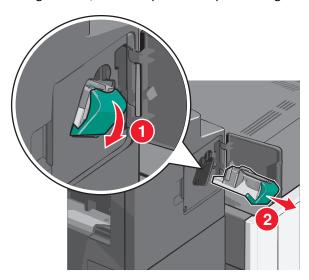
## 455 staple jam

**1** Press the latch to open the stapler door.

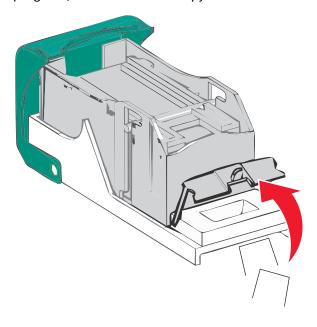
Note: The stapler door is located behind the finisher.



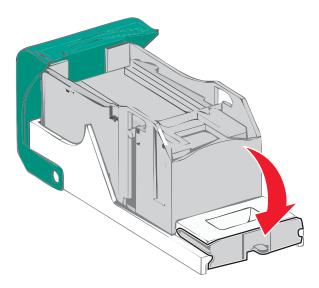
2 Lower the latch of the staple cartridge holder, and then pull the staple cartridge holder out of the printer.



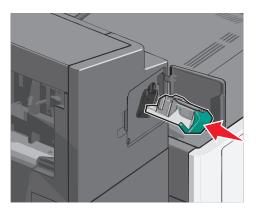
**3** Use the metal tab to lift the staple guard, and then remove any jammed or loose staples.



Close the staple guard.



- Press down on the staple guard until it *clicks* into place.
- Push the staple cartridge holder firmly back into the stapler unit until the staple cartridge holder *clicks* into place.



- Close the stapler door.
- From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

# **Troubleshooting**

## Checking an unresponsive printer

If your printer is not responding, make sure:

- The power cord is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off by any switch or breaker.
- The printer is not plugged into any surge protectors, uninterrupted power supplies, or extension cords.
- Other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet is working.
- The printer is turned on.
- The printer cable is securely attached to the printer and the host computer, print server, option, or other network device.

Once you have checked each of these possibilities, turn the printer off and then back on. This often fixes the problem.

### **Understanding printer messages**

#### **Adjusting color**

Wait for the process to complete.

#### An error has occurred with the USB drive. Please remove and reinsert drive.

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove and reinsert the flash drive.
- If the error message remains, the flash memory may be defective and require replacement.

### Change [paper source] to [custom type name]

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Use current [paper source]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Load the correct paper size and type in the tray, verify the paper size and type settings are specified in the printer control panel Paper menu, and then touch **Paper changed, continue**.
- Touch Cancel job to cancel the print job.

### Change [paper source] to [custom type name] load [orientation]

Try one or more of the following

- Touch Use current [paper source] to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Load the correct paper size and type in the tray, verify the paper size and type settings are specified in the printer control panel Paper menu, and then touch Paper changed, continue.
- Touch Cancel job to cancel the print job.

#### Change [paper source] to [custom string]

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Use current [paper source]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Load the correct paper size and type in the tray, verify the paper size and type settings are specified in the printer control panel Paper menu, and then touch **Paper changed, continue**.
- Touch Cancel job to cancel the print job.

#### Change [paper source] to [custom string] load [orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Use current [paper source]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Load the correct paper size and type in the tray, verify the paper size and type settings are specified in the printer control panel Paper menu, and then touch **Paper changed, continue**.
- Touch Cancel job to cancel the print job.

#### Change [paper source] to [paper size] [paper type]

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch Use current [paper source] to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Load the correct paper size and type in the tray, verify the paper size and type settings are specified in the printer control panel Paper menu, and then touch **Paper changed, continue**.
- Touch Cancel job to cancel the print job.

### Change [paper source] to [paper size] [paper type] load [orientation]

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Use current [paper source]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Load the correct paper size and type in the tray, verify the paper size and type settings are specified in the printer control panel Paper menu, and then touch **Paper changed, continue**.
- Touch Cancel job to cancel the print job.

### Close paper transport cover

Close the paper transport unit cover or door.

#### Close left side door

Close the left side door of the printer.

### Close [tray] door

Close the specified tray door.

#### Close finisher side door

Close the side door of the finisher.

#### Close finisher top cover

Close the top cover of the finisher.

#### Close front door

Close the front door of the printer.

#### **Disk corrupted**

The printer attempted a hard disk recovery on a corrupted hard disk, and the hard disk cannot be repaired. The hard disk must be reformatted.

Touch Format disk to reformat the printer hard disk and clear the message.

Note: Formatting deletes all the files stored on the printer hard disk.

### Disk near full. Securely clearing disk space.

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch Continue to clear the message and continue printing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored on the printer hard disk.
- Install a hard disk with higher capacity.

### Disk problem

The printer hard disk must be reformatted.

Touch Format disk to reformat the printer hard disk and clear the message.

**Note:** Formatting deletes all the files stored on the printer hard disk.

### **Empty the hole punch box**

- 1 Empty the hole punch box.
  For instructions on emptying the hole punch box, from the printer control panel touch More Information.
- 2 Reinsert the hole punch box into the finisher, and then touch Continue to clear the message.

### Error reading USB drive. Remove USB.

An unsupported USB device has been inserted. Remove the USB device, and then install a supported one.

#### Insert staple cartridge

Try one or more of the following:

- Insert a staple cartridge.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and print without using the staple finisher.

#### **Insert Tray [x]**

Insert the specified tray into the printer.

#### Insert the hole punch box

Insert the hole punch box into the finisher, and then touch Continue to clear the message.

#### Install bin [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Install the specified bin:
  - 1 Turn the printer off.
  - **2** Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  - 3 Install the specified bin.
  - **4** Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  - **5** Turn the printer back on.
- Cancel the print job.

### Install envelope feeder

Try one or more of the following:

- Install the envelope feeder:
  - **1** Turn the printer off.
  - **2** Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  - 3 Install the envelope feeder.
  - 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  - **5** Turn the printer back on.
- Cancel the print job.

### **Install Tray [x]**

Try one or more of the following:

- Install the specified tray:
  - 1 Turn the printer off.
  - **2** Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  - **3** Install the specified tray.

- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- **5** Turn the printer back on.
- Cancel the print job.

#### Load [src] with [custom type name]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray or feeder.
- Touch Paper loaded, continue to clear the message and continue printing.

If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it prints from the default paper source.

• Cancel the print job.

#### Load [src] with [custom string]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray or feeder.
- Touch Paper loaded, continue to clear the message and continue printing.

If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it prints from the default paper source.

• Cancel the print job.

### Load [src] with [size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray or feeder.
- Touch Paper loaded, continue to clear the message and continue printing.

If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it feeds from the default paper source.

Cancel the print job.

### Load [src] with [type] [size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray or feeder.
- Touch Paper loaded, continue to clear the message and continue printing.

If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it feeds from the default paper source.

• Cancel the print job.

#### Load Manual Feeder with [custom type name]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the manual feeder.
- Touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** or **Do not prompt, paper loaded** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Touch **Automatically select paper** to use the paper loaded in the tray.
- Cancel the print job.

#### Load Manual Feeder with [custom string]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the manual feeder.
- Touch Prompt each page, paper loaded or Do not prompt, paper loaded to clear the message and continue printing.
- Touch Automatically select paper to use the paper loaded in the tray.
- Cancel the print job.

#### Load Manual Feeder with [paper type] [paper size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the manual feeder.
- Touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** or **Do not prompt, paper loaded** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Touch **Automatically select paper** to use the paper loaded in the tray.
- Cancel the print job.

### Load staples

Try one or more of the following:

- Replace the specified staple cartridge in the finisher.
- Touch Continue to clear the message and continue printing.
- Touch Cancel job to cancel the print job.

### Paper changes needed

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Use current supplies** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current print job.

#### Reattach bin [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Turn the printer off and then back on.
- Reattach the specified bin:
  - 1 Turn the printer off.
  - **2** Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  - **3** Remove the specified bin.
  - 4 Reattach the bin.
  - **5** Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  - 6 Turn the printer back on.
- Remove the specified bin:
  - 1 Turn the printer off.
  - **2** Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  - **3** Remove the specified bin.
  - **4** Contact Customer Support.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and print without using the specified bin.

### Reattach bin [x] - [y]

Try one or more of the following:

- Turn the printer off and then back on.
- Reattach the specified bins:
  - 1 Turn the printer off.
  - **2** Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  - **3** Remove the specified bins.
  - 4 Reattach the bins.
  - **5** Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  - **6** Turn the printer back on.
- Remove the specified bins:
  - **1** Turn the printer off.
  - **2** Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  - **3** Remove the specified bins.
  - 4 Contact Customer Support.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and print without using the specified bins.

### Remove paper from standard output bin

Remove the stack of paper from the standard exit bin.

### Remove paper from bin [x]

Remove the paper from the specified bin. The printer automatically senses paper removal and resumes printing. If removing the paper does not clear the message, then touch **Continue**.

### Remove paper from all bins

Output bins have reached their capacity. Remove paper from all output bins to clear the message and continue printing.

### Remove paper from [linked bin set name]

Remove the paper from the specified bin. The printer automatically senses paper removal and resumes printing. If removing the paper does not clear the message, then touch **Continue**.

### Remove packaging material, [area name]

Remove any remaining packaging material from the specified location.

### Restore held jobs?

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Restore** to restore all held jobs stored on the printer hard disk.
- Touch **Do not restore** if you do not want any print jobs to be restored.

### Slide finisher to the left

Slide the mailbox or finisher to the left until it clicks into place.

## Some held jobs were not restored

Touch Continue to delete the specified job.

**Note:** Held jobs that are not restored stay on the hard disk and are inaccessible.

## Supply needed to complete job

A supply needed to complete the job is missing. Touch Cancel to clear the message.

## **Unsupported disk**

An unsupported disk has been inserted. Remove the unsupported disk, and then install a supported one.

### 31.xx Missing or defective [color] cartridge

Try one or more of the following:

Remove and reinstall the specified print cartridge.
 For instructions on removing a print cartridge, touch More Information.

2 Touch Continue to clear the message.

**Note:** If the message is not cleared, then replace the defective print cartridge.

### 32.xx [color] cartridge part number unsupported by device

1 Remove the unsupported print cartridge, and then install a supported one. For instructions on removing a print cartridge, touch More Information.

2 Touch Continue to clear the message.

## 34 Incorrect paper size, open [src]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the appropriate paper or specialty media in the proper tray.
- Confirm that the wheel on tray 1 is set to the paper size loaded in the tray. Make sure this size is the size you are trying to print.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and print using a different tray.
- Check length and width guides of the tray and make sure the paper is properly loaded in the tray.
- Make sure the Print Properties or Print dialog settings have the correct paper size and type.
- Check that the paper size is correctly set. For example, if the MP Feeder Size is set to Universal, make sure the paper is large enough for the data being printed.
- Cancel the print job.

## 35 Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to disable Resource Save and continue printing.
- To enable Resource Save after receiving this message, make sure the link buffers are set to Auto, and then exit the menus to activate the link buffer changes. When **Ready** appears, enable Resource Save.
- Install additional memory.

## 36 Printer service required

Touch **Continue** to clear the message or contact customer support.

### 37 Insufficient memory to collate job

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to print the portion of the job already stored and begin collating the rest of the print job.
- Cancel the current print job.

### 37 Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to stop the defragment operation and continue printing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data in printer memory.
- Install additional printer memory.

### 37 Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted

The printer deleted some held jobs in order to process current jobs.

Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

### 37 Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored

The printer was unable to restore some or all of the confidential or held jobs on the printer hard disk.

Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

## 38 Memory full

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
- Cancel the current print job.
- Install additional printer memory.

## 39 Complex page, some data may not have printed

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current print job.
- Install additional printer memory.

## 40 [color] invalid refill, change cartridge

Replace the specified cartridge to continue printing.

### 51 Defective flash detected

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current print job.

### 52 Not enough free space in flash memory for resources

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch Continue to clear the message and continue printing.
   Downloaded fonts and macros not previously stored in flash memory are deleted.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored in flash memory.
- Upgrade to a larger capacity flash memory card.

### 53 Unformatted flash detected

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to stop the defragment operation and continue printing.
- Format the flash memory. If the error message remains, the flash memory may be defective and require replacing.

## 54 Serial option [x] error

Try one or more of the following:

- Check that the serial cable is connected properly and is the correct one for the serial port.
- Check that the serial interface parameters (protocol, baud, parity, and data bits) are set correctly on the printer and on the host computer.
- Touch **Continue** to continue printing.
- Turn the printer power off and then back on to reset the printer.

### 54 Standard network software error

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch Continue to continue printing.
- Turn the printer off and then back on to reset the printer.
- Upgrade (flash) the network firmware in the printer or print server.

## 54 Network [x] software error

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to continue printing.
- Turn the printer off, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.
- Upgrade (flash) the network firmware in the printer.

### 55 Unsupported option in slot [x]

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- **2** Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- 3 Remove the unsupported option card from the printer system board, and then replace it with a supported card.
- **4** Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- **5** Turn the printer back on.

### 56 Parallel port [x] disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
  - The printer discards any data received through the parallel port.
- Make sure the Parallel Buffer menu item is not set to Disabled.

## 56 Serial port [x] disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
  - The printer discards any data received through the serial port.
- Make sure the Serial Buffer menu is not set to Disabled.

## 56 Standard USB port disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
  - The printer discards any data received through the USB port.
- Make sure the USB Buffer menu item is not set to Disabled.

## 56 Standard parallel port disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch Continue to clear the message.
  - The printer discards any data received through the parallel port.
- Make sure the Parallel Buffer menu item is not set to Disabled.

## 56 USB port [x] disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
- The printer discards any data received through the USB port.
- Make sure the USB Buffer menu is not set to Disabled.

### 57 Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored

Something has changed in the printer to invalidate the held jobs. Possible changes include:

- The printer firmware has been updated.
- Paper input options needed for the print job were removed.
- The print job was created using data from a device in the USB port and the device is no longer in the USB port.
- The printer hard disk contains print jobs that were stored while installed in a different printer model.

Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

### 58 Input config error

- **1** Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- **3** Check if all tray configurations are correct. Remove unnecessary trays if needed.
- **4** Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- **5** Turn the printer back on.

### 58 Too many bins attached

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- **3** Remove the additional bins.
- **4** Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- **5** Turn the printer back on.

## 58 Too many disks installed

- **1** Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- **3** Remove the excess disks.
- **4** Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- **5** Turn the printer back on.

## 58 Too many flash options installed

- **1** Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- **3** Remove the excess flash memory.

- **4** Connect the power cord to a properly grounded outlet.
- **5** Turn the printer back on.

### 58 Too many trays attached

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- **3** Remove the additional trays.
- **4** Connect the power cord to a properly grounded outlet.
- **5** Turn the printer back on.

### 59 Incompatible output bin [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove the specified output bin.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing without using the specified output bin.

### 61 Remove defective disk

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Install a different printer hard disk before performing any operations that require a printer hard disk.

### 62 Disk full

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue processing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored on the printer hard disk.
- Install a printer hard disk with larger capacity.

### 80.xx Fuser near life warning

- **1** Order a replacement fuser immediately.
- 2 When print quality is reduced, install the new fuser, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.
- 3 Touch Continue to clear the message and continue printing.

## 80.xx Fuser life warning

- Order a replacement fuser immediately. When print quality is reduced, install the new fuser, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.
- Touch Continue to clear the message and continue printing.

### 80.xx Replace fuser

Replace the fuser using the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

### 80.xx Fuser missing

- **1** Replace the fuser, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.
- 2 Touch Continue to clear the message and continue printing.

### 82.xx Waste toner bottle nearly full

Order a replacement waste toner bottle immediately.

- 1 Replace the waste toner bottle.
  For instructions on installing the waste toner bottle, from the printer control panel touch More Information.
- 2 Touch Continue to clear the message and continue printing.

### 82.xx Replace waste toner bottle

- 1 Replace the waste toner bottle.For instructions on replacing the waste toner bottle, from the printer control panel touch More Information.
- 2 Touch Continue to clear the message and continue printing.

## 82.xx Waste toner bottle missing

Reinsert the waste toner bottle into the printer.

## 83.xx Transfer module life warning

- 1 Replace the transfer module, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.
- **2** Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

## 83.xx Transfer module missing

Insert the transfer module into the printer.

## 83.xx Replace transfer module

Replace the transfer module, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

## 88.xx [color] cartridge nearly low

Order a replacement for the specified print cartridge.

### 88.xx [color] cartridge low

- 1 Remove the specified cartridge.
  - **Warning—Potential Damage:** Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.
- 2 Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.
- 3 Reinsert the cartridge, and then touch Continue to clear the message and continue printing.

#### **Notes:**

- Repeat this procedure multiple times until the print remains faded. When the print remains faded, replace the cartridge.
- Have a new cartridge available when the current one no longer prints satisfactorily.

### 88.xx [Color] cartridge very low

The specified print cartridge is very low.

- 1 For instructions on replacing a print cartridge, from the printer control panel touch More Information.
- 2 Touch Continue to clear the message and continue printing.

### 88.xx [Color] cartridge critically low

The specified print cartridge is critically low.

- 1 For instructions on replacing a print cartridge, from the printer control panel touch More Information.
- 2 Touch Continue to clear the message and continue printing.

## 1565 Emulation error, load emulation option

The printer automatically clears the message in 30 seconds and then disables the download emulator on the firmware card.

To fix this, download the correct download emulator version from the Lexmark Web site at www.lexmark.com.

## Solving printing problems

## Multiple-language PDF files do not print

The PDF files may contain unavailable fonts.

- 1 Open the document you want to print in Adobe Acrobat.
- 2 Click the printer icon > Advanced > Print as image > OK > OK.

### Printer control panel display is blank or displays only diamonds

The printer self test failed. Turn the printer off, wait about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.

If Performing Self Test and Ready do not appear, turn the printer off and contact Customer Support.

### Error message about reading USB drive appears

Make sure the flash drive is supported.

### Print jobs do not print

Try one or more of the following:

### Make sure there is no problem with your printer

From the printer control panel, check the status. If necessary, follow the recovery instructions.

### Make sure the printer is ready to print

Make sure **Ready** appears on the display before sending a print job.

### CHECK IF A SUPPLY IS MISSING OR NEEDS REPLACEMENT

Remove and then reinstall or replace the supply.

### CHECK IF THE STANDARD EXIT BIN IS FULL

Remove the paper stack from the standard exit bin.

#### CHECK IF THE PAPER TRAY IS EMPTY

Load paper in the tray.

### Make sure the correct printer software is installed

- Verify that you are using the correct printer software.
- If the printer is connected to your computer through a USB port, then make sure you are running a supported operating system and using a compatible printer software.

#### Make sure the internal print server is working properly

- Make sure the internal print server is properly installed and that the printer is connected to the network.
- Print a network setup page and check that the status shows **Connected**. If the status is **Not Connected**, then check the network cables, and then try printing the network setup page again. Contact your system support person to make sure the network is functioning correctly.

The printer software is available on the Lexmark Web site at http://support.lexmark.com.

### Make sure you are using a recommended USB, serial, or Ethernet cable

For more information, visit the Lexmark Web site at http://support.lexmark.com.

#### Make sure printer cables are securely connected

Check the cable connections to the printer and print server to make sure they are secure.

For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer.

### Confidential and other held jobs do not print

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

### PARTIAL JOB, NO JOB, OR BLANK PAGE PRINTS

The print job may contain a formatting error or invalid data.

- Delete the print job, and then print it again.
- For PDF documents, recreate the PDF and then print it again.

If you are printing from the Internet, then the printer may be reading multiple job titles as duplicates and deleting all jobs except the first one.

- For Windows users, open Print Properties. From the Print and Hold dialog, select the "Keep duplicate documents" check box under the User name text box before entering a PIN number.
- For Macintosh users, save each print job, naming each job differently, and then send the individual jobs to the printer.

### Make sure the printer has sufficient memory

Free up additional printer memory by scrolling through the list of held jobs and deleting some of them.

## Print job takes longer than expected

Try one or more of the following:

#### REDUCE THE COMPLEXITY OF THE PRINT JOB

Eliminate the number and size of fonts, the number and complexity of images, and the number of pages in the print job.

#### TURN OFF THE PAGE PROTECT SETTING

From the home screen, navigate to:

Settings > General Settings > Print Recovery > Page Protect > Off >

### **CHANGE THE ENVIRONMENTAL SETTINGS**

When using Eco-Mode or Quiet Mode settings, you may notice a reduction in performance.

### Job prints from the wrong tray or on the wrong paper

### CHECK THE PAPER TYPE AND PAPER SIZE SETTINGS

Make sure the paper type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the paper type and paper size settings.
- **2** Before sending the job to print, specify the correct type setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the paper type from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the paper type from the Print dialog.

### **Incorrect characters print**

- Make sure the printer is not in Hex Trace mode. If **Ready Hex** appears on the display, you must exit Hex Trace mode before you can print your job. Turn the printer off and back on to exit Hex Trace mode.
- Make sure the SmartSwitch settings are set to On in the Network and USB menus.

### Tray linking does not work

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

#### LOAD THE SAME SIZE AND TYPE OF PAPER

- Load the same size and type of paper in each tray to be linked.
- Move the paper guides to the correct positions for the paper size loaded in each tray.

### Use the same Paper Size and Paper Type settings

- Print a menu settings page and compare the settings for each tray.
- If necessary, adjust the settings from the Paper Size/Type menu.

**Note:** The standard 550-sheet tray and the multipurpose feeder do not automatically sense the paper size. You must set the size from the Paper Size/Type menu.

## Large jobs do not collate

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

### MAKE SURE COLLATE IS SET TO ON

From the Finishing menu or Print Properties, set Collate to On.

Note: Setting Collate to Off in the software overrides the setting in the Finishing menu.

#### REDUCE THE COMPLEXITY OF THE PRINT JOB

Reduce the complexity of the print job by eliminating the number and size of fonts, the number and complexity of images, and the number of pages in the job.

### Make sure the printer has enough memory

Add printer memory or an optional hard disk.

### **Unexpected page breaks**

### INCREASE THE PRINT TIMEOUT VALUE

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:
  - > Settings > General Settings > Timeouts > Print Timeout
- 2 Increase the Print Timeout value, and then touch ✓.

# Solving home screen applications problems

### An application error has occurred

### **CHECK THE SYSTEM LOG FOR RELEVANT DETAILS**

- 1 Type the printer IP address or host name in the address field of your Web browser.
  - If you do not know the IP address or host name of the printer, then you can:
  - View the information on the printer control panel home screen, or in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
  - Print a network setup page or menu settings page and locate the information in the TCP/IP section.
- 2 Click Settings or Configuration.
- 3 Click Device Solutions > Solutions (eSF) > System tab > Log.
- **4** From the Filter menu, select an application status.
- **5** From the Application menu, select an application, and then click **Submit**.

### **C**ONTACT CUSTOMER SUPPORT

If you still cannot isolate the problem, then contact customer support.

# Solving option problems

## Option does not operate correctly or quits after it is installed

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

#### RESET THE PRINTER

Turn the printer off, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer on.

#### CHECK TO SEE IF THE OPTION IS CONNECTED TO THE PRINTER

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- **2** Unplug the printer.
- **3** Check the connection between the option and the printer.

#### Make sure the option is installed

Print a menu settings page and check to see if the option is listed in the Installed Options list. If the option is not listed, reinstall it.

### Make sure the option is available in the printer driver

It may be necessary to manually add the option in the printer driver to make it available for print jobs. For more information, see "Updating available options in the printer driver" on page 45.

#### Make sure the option is selected

From the program you are using, select the option. Mac OS 9 users should make sure the printer is set up in the Chooser.

## Paper tray problems

Try one or more of the following:

### Make sure the paper is loaded correctly

- **1** Open the paper tray.
- **2** Check for paper jams or misfeeds.
- **3** Make sure the paper guides are aligned against the edges of the paper.
- **4** Make sure the paper tray closes properly.

#### RESET THE PRINTER

Turn the printer off, wait about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer on.

### Make sure the paper tray is installed correctly

If the paper tray is listed on the menu settings page, but paper jams when it enters or exits the tray, then it may not be properly installed. Reinstall the paper tray. For more information, see the hardware setup documentation that came with the paper tray, or go to http://support.lexmark.com to view the paper tray instruction sheet.

## 2,000-sheet drawer problems

### **CHECK THE DRAWER CONNECTION**

Make sure the 2,000-sheet drawer is properly connected to the printer.

#### LOAD PAPER

If the tray is empty, then load paper in the tray or feeder

### **CLEAR ANY JAMS**

Open the side door of the tray or feeder, and then remove any jammed paper.

### **AVOID PAPER JAMS**

- Flex the paper.
- Make sure the drawer is properly installed.
- Make sure paper is loaded correctly.
- Make sure the paper stack you load does not exceed the maximum stack height indicated in the tray.
- Make sure the paper or specialty media meets specifications and is not damaged.
- Make sure the guides are positioned correctly for the paper size loaded.

### Cannot detect flash memory card

Make sure the flash memory card is securely connected to the printer system board.

### Cannot detect printer hard disk

Make sure the printer hard disk is securely connected to the printer system board.

## **Internal Solutions Port does not operate correctly**

Try one or more of the following:

## CHECK THE INTERNAL SOLUTIONS PORT (ISP) CONNECTIONS

Make sure the ISP is securely connected to the printer system board.

### CHECK THE CABLE

Make sure you are using the correct cable and that it is securely connected to the Internal Solutions (ISP) port.

### Make sure the Network software is configured correctly

For information on installing the network printing software, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software and Documentation* CD.

### Internal print server does not operate correctly

Try one or more of the following:

### **CHECK THE PRINT SERVER CONNECTIONS**

- Make sure the internal print server is attached securely to the printer system board.
- Make sure you are using the correct cable and that it is securely connected.

#### Make sure the network software is configured correctly

For more information on installing the network printing software, do the following:

- 1 Open the Software and Documentation CD.
- 2 Click Additional.
- 3 Under Publications on this CD, select Networking Guide.

### Memory card

Make sure the memory card is securely connected to the printer system board.

## USB/parallel interface card does not operate correctly

### CHECK THE USB/PARALLEL INTERFACE CARD CONNECTION

Make sure the USB/parallel interface card is securely connected to the printer system board.

#### CHECK THE CABLE

Make sure you are using the correct cable and that it is securely connected.

# Solving paper feed problems

## Paper frequently jams

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

### CHECK THE PAPER

Use recommended paper and specialty media. For more information, see the chapter about paper and specialty media guidelines.

### Make sure there is not too much paper in the paper tray

Make sure the stack of paper you load does not exceed the maximum stack height indicated in the tray or on the multipurpose feeder.

### **C**HECK THE PAPER GUIDES

Move the guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

### THE PAPER MAY HAVE ABSORBED MOISTURE DUE TO HIGH HUMIDITY

- Load paper from a fresh package.
- Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

## Paper jam message remains after jam is cleared

#### CHECK THE PAPER PATH

The paper path is not clear. Clear jammed paper from the entire paper path, and then touch **Continue**.

### Jammed pages are not reprinted

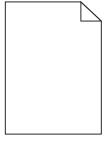
### TURN ON JAM RECOVERY

- **1** From the home screen, navigate to:
  - > Settings > General Settings > Print Recovery
- 2 Touch the arrows next to Jam Recovery until On or Auto appears.
- **3** Touch ✓.

# Solving print quality problems

If the solutions here do not correct the problem, contact customer support. You may have a printer part that requires adjustment or replacement.

## Printer is printing blank pages



Try one or more of the following:

#### Make sure there is no packing material left on the toner or print cartridge

Remove the cartridge and make sure the packing material is properly removed. Reinstall the cartridge.

### Make sure the toner or print cartridge is not low on toner

When 88.xx [color] cartridge low appears, make sure that toner is distributed evenly among all four cartridges:

**1** Remove the cartridge.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

- 2 Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.
- **3** Reinsert the cartridge.

Note: If print quality does not improve, then replace the cartridge of the color that is not printing.

If the problem continues, then the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact customer support.

## Characters have jagged or uneven edges



If you are using downloaded fonts, verify that the fonts are supported by the printer, the host computer, and the software program.

## **Clipped images**

Try one or more of the following:

#### **CHECK THE GUIDES**

Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

### **CHECK THE PAPER SIZE SETTING**

Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Size setting.
- **2** Before sending the job to print, specify the correct size setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the size from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the size from the Page Setup dialog.

## Fine horizontal lines appear on color pages

You may notice fine, horizontal lines in photographs or pages with a high concentration of color. This can occur when the printer is in Quiet Mode. To fix this, set Quiet Mode to **Off (Image/Photo)**.

### **Shadow images appear on prints**



Try one or more of the following:

#### CHECK THE PAPER TYPE AND WEIGHT SETTINGS

Make sure the paper type and weight settings match the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type and Paper Weight settings.
- **2** Before sending the print job, specify the correct paper type setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the paper type from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the paper type from the Print dialog.

### Make sure the print cartridge is not low on toner

When 88.xx [color] cartridge low appears, make sure that toner is distributed evenly among all four print cartridges or whichever color has the shadow images.

1 Remove the print cartridge.

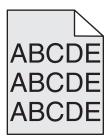
**Warning—Potential Damage:** Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

- 2 Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.
- **3** Reinsert the print cartridge.

Note: If print quality does not improve, replace the print cartridge of the color that is giving a shadow.

If the problem continues, the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact customer support.

## **Gray background on prints**



### Make sure there is no worn or defective print cartridge

Replace the worn or defective print cartridge.

### **Incorrect margins**



These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

### **CHECK THE PAPER GUIDES**

Move the guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

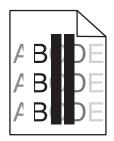
### **CHECK THE PAPER SIZE SETTING**

Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Size setting.
- **2** Before sending the job to print, specify the correct size setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the size from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the size from the Page Setup dialog.

## Light colored line, white line, or incorrectly colored line appears on prints





Try one or more of the following:

### Make sure there is no defective print cartridge

Replace the defective print cartridge.

#### Make sure the transfer belt is not defective

Replace the defective transfer belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

### Paper curl

Try one or more of the following:

### **CHECK THE PAPER TYPE AND WEIGHT SETTINGS**

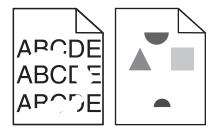
Make sure the paper type and weight settings match the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type and Paper Weight settings.
- **2** Before sending the print job, specify the correct paper type setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the paper type from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the paper type from the Print dialog.

#### LOAD PAPER FROM A FRESH PACKAGE

Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

### **Print irregularities**



Try one or more of the following:

### LOAD PAPER FROM A FRESH PACKAGE

The paper may have absorbed moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

#### CHECK THE PAPER TYPE AND WEIGHT SETTINGS

Make sure the paper type and weight settings match the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type and Paper Weight settings.
- **2** Before sending the print job, specify the correct paper type setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the paper type from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the paper type from the Print dialog.

### **A**VOID TEXTURED PAPER WITH ROUGH FINISHES

### Make sure there is no defective print cartridge

Replace the worn or defective print cartridge.

#### Make sure the transfer belt is not defective

Replace the defective transfer belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

### Make sure the fuser is not defective

Replace the defective fuser. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

### Print is too dark



Try one or more of the following:

### LOAD PAPER FROM A FRESH PACKAGE

The paper may have absorbed moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

#### **AVOID TEXTURED PAPER WITH ROUGH FINISHES**

### CHECK THE PAPER TYPE SETTING

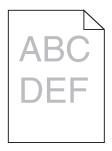
Make sure the Paper Type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type setting.
- For Windows users, check this setting from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, check this setting from the Print dialog.

### Make sure there is no defective print cartridge

Replace the defective print cartridge.

### Print is too light



Try one or more of the following:

### LOAD PAPER FROM A FRESH PACKAGE

The paper may have absorbed moisture from high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

#### **AVOID TEXTURED PAPER WITH ROUGH FINISHES**

### CHECK THE PAPER TYPE SETTING

Make sure the Paper Type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type setting.
- For Windows users, check this setting from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, check this setting from the Print dialog.

#### Make sure the print cartridge is not low on toner

When 88.xx [color] cartridge low appears, make sure the toner is distributed evenly within the print cartridge.

1 Remove the print cartridge.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

- 2 Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.
- **3** Reinsert the print cartridge.

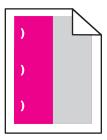
**Note:** If print quality does not improve, then replace the print cartridge.

If the problem continues, then the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact customer support.

#### Make sure there is no defective print cartridge

Replace the defective print cartridge.

## Repeating defects appear on prints



Try one or more of the following:

#### REPLACE THE PRINT CARTRIDGE

Replace the print cartridge of the color with the repeating defect, if the print defects occur in the following instances:

- in every 37.7 mm (1.48 in.) of the page
- in every 41.6 mm (1.64 in.) of the page
- in every 42.7 mm (1.68 in.) of the page
- in every 94.3 mm (3.71 in.) of the page

#### REPLACE THE FUSER

Replace the fuser if print defects occur in the following instances:

- in every 95.0 mm (3.74 in.) of the page
- in every 146.7 mm (5.78 in.) of the page

### **Skewed print**

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

#### **CHECK THE PAPER GUIDES**

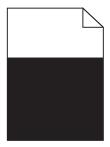
Move the length and width guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

- Make sure the guides are not too far from the paper stack.
- Make sure the guides are not pressing too lightly against the paper stack.

### CHECK THE PAPER

Make sure you are using paper that meets the printer specifications.

## Solid color or black pages appear on prints



Make sure the print cartridges are installed correctly, are not defective and not low on toner

• Remove the print cartridges.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

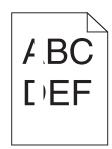
• Reinsert the print cartridges.

**Note:** If the quality does not improve, replace the print cartridges.

If the problem continues, the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact customer support.

## Black or white streaks appear on transparencies or paper





Try one or more of the following:

#### Ensure that the fill pattern is correct

If the fill pattern is incorrect, choose a different fill pattern from your software program.

### **CHECK THE PAPER TYPE**

- Use only the recommended transparencies.
- Ensure that the Paper Type setting matches what is loaded in the tray or feeder.
- Ensure that the Paper Texture setting is correct for the type of paper or specialty media loaded in the tray or feeder.

### Make sure the print cartridge is not low on toner

When 88.xx [color] cartridge low appears, make sure the toner is distributed evenly within the print cartridge:

1 Remove the print cartridge.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

- 2 Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.
- **3** Reinsert the print cartridge.

If the problem continues, the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact Customer Support.

## Streaked horizontal lines appear on prints



Try one or more of the following:

### **S**ELECT ANOTHER TRAY OR FEEDER

- From the printer control panel Paper Menu, select Default Source.
- For Windows users, select the paper source from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, select the paper source from the Print dialog and pop-up menus.

### Make sure there is no worn, defective, or empty print cartridge

Replace the worn, defective, or empty print cartridge.

## Toner fog or background shading appears on a page

Try one or more of the following:

#### Make sure print cartridges are installed correctly and are not defective

Reinstall or replace the print cartridge.

#### Make sure the transfer belt is not worn or defective

Replace the transfer belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

#### Make sure the fuser is not worn or defective

Replace the fuser. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

### Make sure there is no toner in the paper path

Clean any visible toner from the paper path. If the problem persists, then contact customer support.

#### RECALIBRATE THE PRINTER

Perform color adjust from the printer control panel Quality menu.

### CHECK THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM OR APPLICATION

The software program or application may have specified an off-white background.

### Toner rubs off



Try one or more of the following:

#### CHECK THE PAPER TYPE AND WEIGHT SETTINGS

Make sure the paper type and weight settings match the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type and Paper Weight settings. Change the Paper Weight setting from Normal to Heavy.
- **2** Before sending the print job, specify the correct paper type setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the paper type from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the paper type from the Print dialog.

#### **CHECK THE PAPER TEXTURE SETTING**

From the printer control panel Paper menu, make sure the Paper Texture setting matches the paper loaded in the tray or feeder. If necessary, change the Paper Texture setting from Normal to Rough.

#### Make sure the fuser is not worn or defective

Replace the worn or defective fuser. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

### Transparency print quality is poor

Try one or more of the following:

### **CHECK THE TRANSPARENCIES**

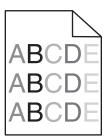
Use only transparencies that meet the printer specifications.

### **CHECK THE PAPER TYPE SETTING**

Make sure the paper type setting is set to Transparency:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type setting.
- **2** Before sending the job to print, specify the correct type setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the type from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the type from the Print dialog.

## **Uneven print density**



#### Make sure there is no defective or worn print cartridge

Replace the worn or defective print cartridge.

# Solving color quality problems

This section helps answer some basic color-related questions and describes how some of the features provided in the Quality Menu can be used to solve typical color problems.

### FAQ about color printing

#### What is RGB color?

Red, green, and blue light can be added together in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. For example, red and green can be combined to create yellow. Televisions and computer monitors create colors in this manner. RGB color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of red, green, or blue needed to produce a certain color.

#### What is CMYK color?

Cyan, magenta, yellow, and black inks or toners can be printed in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. For example, cyan and yellow can be combined to create green. Printing presses, inkjet printers, and color laser printers create colors in this manner. CMYK color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black needed to reproduce a particular color.

### How is color specified in a document to be printed?

Software programs typically specify document color using RGB or CMYK color combinations. Additionally, they allow users to modify the color of each object in a document. For more information, see the software program Help topics.

#### How does the printer know what color to print?

When a user prints a document, information describing the type and color of each object is sent to the printer. The color information is passed through color conversion tables that translate the color into the appropriate amounts of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black toner needed to produce the desired color. The object information determines the application of color conversion tables. For example, it is possible to apply one type of color conversion table to text while applying a different color conversion table to photographic images.

#### Why doesn't the printed color match the color I see on the computer screen?

The color conversion tables used in Auto Color Correction mode generally approximate the colors of a standard computer monitor. However, because of technology differences that exist between printers and monitors, there are many colors that can also be affected by monitor variations and lighting conditions. For recommendations on how the printer color sample pages may be useful in solving certain color-matching problems, see the question, "How can I match a particular color (such as a corporate logo)?"

### The printed page appears tinted. Can I adjust the color?

Sometimes a printed page may appear tinted (for example, everything printed seems to be too red). This can be caused by environmental conditions, paper type, lighting conditions, or user preference. In these instances, adjust the Color Balance setting to create a more preferable color. Color Balance provides the user with the ability to make subtle adjustments to the amount of toner being used in each color plane. Selecting positive or negative values for cyan, magenta, yellow, and black (from the Color Balance menu) will slightly increase or decrease the amount of toner used for the chosen color. For example, if a printed page has a red tint, then decreasing both magenta and yellow could potentially improve the color balance.

### My color transparencies seem dark when they are projected. Is there anything I can do to improve the color?

This problem most commonly occurs when projecting transparencies with reflective overhead projectors. To obtain the highest projected color quality, transmissive overhead projectors are recommended. If a reflective projector must be used, then adjusting the Toner Darkness setting to 1, 2, or 3 will lighten the transparency. Make sure to print on the recommended type of color transparencies.

#### What is manual color correction?

When manual color correction is enabled, the printer employs user-selected color conversion tables to process objects. However, Color Correction must be set to Manual, or no user-defined color conversion will be implemented. Manual color correction settings are specific to the type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images), and how the color of the object is specified in the software program (RGB or CMYK combinations).

#### **Notes:**

- Manual color correction is not useful if the software program does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK
  combinations. It is also not effective in situations in which the software program or the computer operating
  system controls the adjustment of colors.
- The color conversion tables—applied to each object when Color Correction is set to Auto—generate preferred colors for the majority of documents.

To manually apply a different color conversion table:

- 1 From the Quality menu, select Color Correction, and then select Manual.
- **2** From the Quality menu, select **Manual Color**, and then select the appropriate color conversion table for the affected object type.

#### **Manual Color menu**

Object type	Color conversion tables
RGB Image RGB Text	Vivid—Produces brighter, more saturated colors and may be applied to all incoming color formats.
RGB Graphics	<ul> <li>sRGB Display—Produces an output that approximates the colors displayed on a computer monitor. Black toner usage is optimized for printing photographs.</li> </ul>
	Display—True Black—Produces an output that approximates the colors displayed on a computer monitor. Uses only black toner to create all levels of neutral gray.
	<ul> <li>sRGB Vivid—Provides an increased color saturation for the sRGB         Display color correction. Black usage is optimized for printing business             graphics.     </li> </ul>
	Off—No color correction is implemented.
CMYK Image CMYK Text	US CMYK—Applies color correction to approximate the SWOP     (Specifications for Web Offset Publishing) color output.
CMYK Graphics	Euro CMYK—Applies color correction to approximated EuroScale color output.
	Vivid CMYK—Increases the color saturation of the US CMYK color correction setting.
	Off—No color correction is implemented.

### How can I match a particular color (such as a corporate logo)?

From the printer Quality menu, nine types of Color Samples sets are available. These are also available from the Color Samples page of the Embedded Web Server. Selecting any sample set generates a multiple-page printout consisting of hundreds of colored boxes. Either a CMYK or RGB combination is located on each box, depending on the table selected. The observed color of each box is obtained by passing the CMYK or RGB combination labeled on the box through the selected color conversion table.

By examining Color Samples sets, a user can identify the box whose color is the closest to the desired color. The color combination labeled on the box can then be used for modifying the color of the object in a software program. For more information, see the software program Help topics. Manual color correction may be necessary to utilize the selected color conversion table for the particular object.

Selecting which Color Samples set to use for a particular color-matching problem depends on the Color Correction setting being used (Auto, Off, or Manual), the type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images), and how the color of the object is specified in the software program (RGB or CMYK combinations). When the printer Color Correction setting is set to Off, the color is based on the print job information; and no color conversion is implemented.

**Note:** The Color Samples pages are not useful if the software program does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations. Additionally, certain situations exist in which the software program or the computer operating system adjusts the RGB or CMYK combinations specified in the program through color management. The resulting printed color may not be an exact match of the Color Samples pages.

#### What are detailed Color Samples and how do I access them?

Detailed Color Samples sets are available only through the Embedded Web Server of a network printer. A detailed Color Samples set contains a range of shades (displayed as colored boxes) that are similar to a user-defined RGB or CMYK value. The likeness of the colors in the set are dependent on the value entered in the RGB or CMYK Increment box.

To access a detailed Color Samples set from the Embedded Web Server:

1 Type the printer IP address or host name in the address field of your Web browser.

**Note:** If you do not know the IP address or host name of the printer, then you can:

- View the information on the printer control panel home screen, or in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or menu settings page and locate the information in the TCP/IP section.
- 2 Click Configuration > Color Samples > Detailed Options.
- **3** Select a color conversion table.
- 4 Enter the RGB or CMYK color number.
- **5** Enter an increment value from 1–255.

**Note:** The closer the value is to 1, the narrower the color sample range will appear.

6 Click Print.

## **Embedded Web Server does not open**

Try one or more of the following:

### **CHECK THE NETWORK CONNECTION**

Make sure the printer and computer are turned on and connected to the same network.

### CHECK THE ADDRESS ENTERED IN THE WEB BROWSER

- Depending on the network settings, you may need to type "https://" instead of "http://" before the printer IP address to access the Embedded Web Server. For more information, contact your system support person.
- Make sure printer IP address is correct.

### TEMPORARILY DISABLE WEB PROXY SERVERS

Proxy servers may block or restrict you from accessing certain Web sites including the Embedded Web Server. For more information, contact your system support person.

# **Contacting customer support**

When you call customer support, describe the problem you are experiencing, the message on the display, and the troubleshooting steps you have already taken to find a solution.

You need to know your printer model type and serial number. For more information, see the label on the inside top front cover of the printer. The serial number is also listed on the menu settings page.

In the U.S. or Canada, call 1-800-539-6275. For other countries or regions, visit the Lexmark Web site at http://support.lexmark.com.

# **Notices**

### **Product information**

Product name:

Lexmark C792e, C792de, C792dte, C792dhe

Machine type:

5062

Model(s):

210, 230, 235

### **Edition notice**

January 2011

The following paragraph does not apply to any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC., PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions; therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This publication could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in later editions. Improvements or changes in the products or the programs described may be made at any time.

References in this publication to products, programs, or services do not imply that the manufacturer intends to make these available in all countries in which it operates. Any reference to a product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any existing intellectual property right may be used instead. Evaluation and verification of operation in conjunction with other products, programs, or services, except those expressly designated by the manufacturer, are the user's responsibility.

For Lexmark technical support, visit support.lexmark.com.

For information on supplies and downloads, visit www.lexmark.com.

If you don't have access to the Internet, you can contact Lexmark by mail:

Lexmark International, Inc. Bldg 004-2/CSC 740 New Circle Road NW Lexington, KY 40550 USA

© 2010 Lexmark International, Inc.

All rights reserved.

### **UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RIGHTS**

This software and any accompanying documentation provided under this agreement are commercial computer software and documentation developed exclusively at private expense.

### **Trademarks**

Lexmark, Lexmark with diamond design, MarkNet, and MarkVision are trademarks of Lexmark International, Inc., registered in the United States and/or other countries.

MarkTrack, PrintCryption, and StapleSmart are trademarks of Lexmark International, Inc.

PCL® is a registered trademark of the Hewlett-Packard Company. PCL is Hewlett-Packard Company's designation of a set of printer commands (language) and functions included in its printer products. This printer is intended to be compatible with the PCL language. This means the printer recognizes PCL commands used in various application programs, and that the printer emulates the functions corresponding to the commands.

The following terms are trademarks or registered trademarks of these companies:

Albertus	The Monotype Corporation plc
Antique Olive	Monsieur Marcel OLIVE
Apple-Chancery	Apple Computer, Inc.
Arial	The Monotype Corporation plc
CG Times	Based on Times New Roman under license from The Monotype Corporation plc, is a product of Agfa Corporation
Chicago	Apple Computer, Inc.
Clarendon	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Eurostile	Nebiolo
Geneva	Apple Computer, Inc.
GillSans	The Monotype Corporation plc
Helvetica	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Hoefler	Jonathan Hoefler Type Foundry
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Bookman	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Mona Lisa	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Zapf Chancery	International Typeface Corporation
Joanna	The Monotype Corporation plc
Marigold	Arthur Baker
Monaco	Apple Computer, Inc.
New York	Apple Computer, Inc.
Oxford	Arthur Baker
Palatino	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries

Stempel Garamond	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries	
Taffy	Agfa Corporation	
Times New Roman	The Monotype Corporation plc	
Univers	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries	

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

### Federal Communications Commission (FCC) compliance information statement

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Class A limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

**Note:** To assure compliance with FCC regulations on electromagnetic interference for a Class A computing device, use a properly shielded and grounded cable such as Lexmark part number 1021231 for parallel attach or 1021294 for USB attach. Use of a substitute cable not properly shielded and grounded may result in a violation of FCC regulations.

## Modular component notice

This product may contain the following modular component(s):

Lexmark regulatory type/model LEX-M01-003; FCC ID: IYLM01003; IC: 2376A-M01003

## **Licensing notices**

The following documents can be viewed from the installation software CD.

Directory	File
CD:\LEGAL	FW_License.pdf
	mDNS.tar.gz
	Expat.txt
	Inst_lib.txt
	Instgui.txt
	Instgui.zip

### Noise emission levels

The following measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779 and reported in conformance with ISO 9296.

Note: Some modes may not apply to your product.

1-meter average sound pressure, dBA	
Printing	53 color, 52 mono
Ready	30

Values are subject to change. See www.lexmark.com for current values.

## Waste from Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) directive



The WEEE logo signifies specific recycling programs and procedures for electronic products in countries of the European Union. We encourage the recycling of our products. If you have further questions about recycling options, visit the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com** for your local sales office phone number.

## Static sensitivity notice



This symbol identifies static-sensitive parts. Do not touch in the areas near these symbols without first touching the metal frame of the printer.

### **ENERGY STAR**

Any Lexmark product bearing the ENERGY STAR emblem on the product or on a start-up screen is certified to comply with Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) ENERGY STAR requirements as configured when shipped by Lexmark.



**Notices** 

### **Temperature information**

Ambient temperature	15.6 to 32.2° C (60 to 90° F)
Shipping and storage temperature	-40° to 40° C (104° F)

### Laser notice

This product contains a Class I (1) laser producing invisible laser radiation. The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR Subchapter J for Class I (1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class I laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 60825-1.

Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The printer contains internally a Class IIIb (3b) AlGaAs dual beam laser enclosed in a non-serviceable printhead assembly operating in the wavelength of 775-800 nanometers. The laser system and printer are designed so there is never any human access to laser radiation exceeding Class I levels during normal operation, user maintenance, or prescribed service condition.

### Laser advisory label

A laser notice label may be affixed to this printer as shown:

DANGER - Invisible laser radiation when cartridges are removed and interlock defeated. Avoid exposu Perigo - Emissão invisível de laser quando os cartuchos são removidos e a trava aberta. Evite exposição ao feixe. Opasnost – Nevidljivo lasersko zračenje kada su kasete uklonjene i poništena sigurnosna veza. Izbjegavati izlaganje zracima. Pozor Nebezpečí výskytu neviditelného laserového záření při odstranění kazet a odblokování pojistky. Nevystavujte se paprskům Fare - Usynlig laserstråling, når tonerkassetterne fjernes og aflåsning ophæves. Undgå at komme i kontakt med strålen. Pas op! - Onzichtbare laserstraling als cartridges worden verwijderd en vergrendeling open is. Voorkom blootstelling aan de stralen Danger - Radiations invisibles lors du retrait des cartouches et du déverouillage des loquets. Eviter toute exposition au rayon laser. Vaara - Näkymätöntä lasersäteilyä on varottava, kun värikasetit on poistettu ja lukitus on auki. Vältä säteelle altistumista Gefahr – Unsichtbare Laserstrahlung beim Herausnehmen von Druckkassetten und offener Sicherheitssperre. Laserstrahl meiden Κίνδυνος - Αόρατη ακτινοβολία λέιζερ όταν αφαιρούνται οι κασέτες και εξουδετερώνεται η ενδασφ Figyelem! A kazetták kivételekor láthatatlan lézersugárzás léphet fel, ha a biztonsági kapcsoló nem működik. Kerüljük el a lézersugarat. Pericolo - Emissione di radiazioni laser durante la rimozione delle cartucce e del blocco. Evitare l'esposizione ai ra Fare - Usynlig laserstråling når kassetter tas ut og sperren er satt ut av spill. Unngå eksponering. Nlebezpieczeństwo - niewidoczne promieniowanie laserowe po wyjęciu kasety i wyłączeniu blokady. Unikać ekspozycji na wiązkę. Onacho! При снятых картриджах и нарушении фиксации невидимое глазу лазерное излучение!. Избегайте воздействия луча Pozor - Nebezpečenstvo neviditelného laserového žlarenia pri odobratých kazetá ch a odblokovanej polstke. Nevystavujte sa lúčom. Peligro: Se producen radiaciones láser invisibles al extraer los cartuchos con el interbloqueo desactivado. Evite la exposición al haz de láser. Varning - Osynlig laserstrålning när kassetterna är borttagna och spärren avaktiverad. Undvik att utsätta dig för strålen. - 当鼓粉盒被取出并且互锁失去作用时有看不见的激光辐射。请避免暴露在激光光束下。 - 移除碳粉匣與安全連鎖開關失效時會產生看不見的雷射輻射 · 請避免曝露在雷射光束下 危険:カートリッジが取外され、内部ロックが無効になると、見えないレーザー光が放射します。光線に当らないようにして下さい

## **Power consumption**

### **Product power consumption**

The following table documents the power consumption characteristics of the product.

Note: Some modes may not apply to your product.

Mode	Description	Power consumption (Watts)
Active	The product is generating hard-copy output from electronic inputs.	850 W
Idle	The product is waiting for a print job.	50 W
Sleep Mode	The product is in a high-level energy-saving mode.	10 W

Mode	Description	Power consumption (Watts)
Hibernate	The product is in a low-level energy-saving mode.	0.55 W
Off	The product is plugged into a wall outlet, but the power switch is turned off.	0 W

The power consumption levels listed in the previous table represent time-averaged measurements. Instantaneous power draws may be substantially higher than the average.

Values are subject to change. See www.lexmark.com for current values.

#### Sleep Mode

This product is designed with an energy-saving mode called *Sleep Mode*. The Sleep Mode saves energy by lowering power consumption during extended periods of inactivity. The Sleep Mode is automatically engaged after this product is not used for a specified period of time, called the Sleep Mode Timeout.

Factory default Sleep Mode Timeout for this product (in minutes):		Factory default Sleep Mode Timeout for this product (in minutes):	30	
---	--	---	----	--

By using the configuration menus, the Sleep Mode Timeout can be modified between 1 minute and 240 minutes. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a low value reduces energy consumption, but may increase the response time of the product. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a high value maintains a fast response, but uses more energy.

#### Off mode

If this product has an off mode which still consumes a small amount of power, then to completely stop product power consumption, disconnect the power supply cord from the wall outlet.

#### Total energy usage

It is sometimes helpful to calculate the total product energy usage. Since power consumption claims are provided in power units of Watts, the power consumption should be multiplied by the time the product spends in each mode in order to calculate energy usage. The total product energy usage is the sum of each mode's energy usage.

# **Industry Canada compliance statement**

This Class A digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard ICES-003.

# Avis de conformité aux normes de l'industrie du Canada

Cet appareil numérique de classe A est conforme aux exigences de la norme canadienne relative aux équipements pouvant causer des interférences NMB-003.

# **European Community (EC) directives conformity**

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC and 2006/95/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility and safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class A limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

# Radio interference notice

### Warning

This is a product that complies with the emission requirements of EN55022 Class A limits and immunity requirements of EN55024. This product is not intended to be used in residential/domestic environments.

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio interference, in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

# Regulatory notices for wireless products

This section contains the following regulatory information pertaining to wireless products that contain transmitters, for example, but not limited to, wireless network cards or proximity card readers.

# **Exposure to radio frequency radiation**

The radiated output power of this device is far below the radio frequency exposure limits of the FCC and other regulatory agencies. A minimum separation of 20 cm (8 inches) must be maintained between the antenna and any persons for this device to satisfy the RF exposure requirements of the FCC and other regulatory agencies.

# **Industry Canada (Canada)**

This device complies with Industry Canada specification RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device has been designed to operate only with the antenna provided. Use of any other antenna is strictly prohibited per regulations of Industry Canada.

To prevent radio interference to the licensed service, this device is intended to be operated indoors and away from windows to provide maximum shielding. Equipment (or its transmit antenna) that is installed outdoors is subject to licensing.

The installer of this radio equipment must ensure that the antenna is located or pointed such that it does not emit RF fields in excess of Health Canada limits for the general population; consult Safety Code 6, obtainable from Health Canada's Web site www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb.

The term "IC:" before the certification/registration number only signifies that the Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

#### **Industry Canada (Canada)**

Cet appareil est conforme à la norme RSS-210 d'Industry Canada. Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes :

(1) cet appareil ne doit pas provoquer d'interférences et (2) il doit accepter toute interférence reçue, y compris celles risquant d'altérer son fonctionnement.

Cet appareil a été conçu pour fonctionner uniquement avec l'antenne fournie. L'utilisation de toute autre antenne est strictement interdite par la réglementation d'Industry Canada.

En application des réglementations d'Industry Canada, l'utilisation d'une antenne de gain supérieur est strictement interdite.

Pour empêcher toute interférence radio au service faisant l'objet d'une licence, cet appareil doit être utilisé à l'intérieur et loin des fenêtres afin de garantir une protection optimale.

Si le matériel (ou son antenne d'émission) est installé à l'extérieur, il doit faire l'objet d'une licence.

L'installateur de cet équipement radio doit veiller à ce que l'antenne soit implantée et dirigée de manière à n'émettre aucun champ HF dépassant les limites fixées pour l'ensemble de la population par Santé Canada. Reportez-vous au Code de sécurité 6 que vous pouvez consulter sur le site Web de Santé Canada www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb.

Le terme « IC » précédant le numéro de d'accréditation/inscription signifie simplement que le produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Industry Canada.

# Notice to users in the European Union

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC and 2005/32/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and the ecodesign of energy-using products.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class A limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

Products equipped with 2.4GHz Wireless LAN option are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, and 1999/5/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



Operation is allowed in all EU and EFTA countries, but is restricted to indoor use only.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium

Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product may be used in the countries indicated in the table below.

AT	BE	BG	СН	СУ	CZ	DE	DK	EE
EL	ES	FI	FR	HR	ни	IE	IS	IT
LI	LT	LU	LV	МТ	NL	NO	PL	PT
RO	SE	SI	SK	TR	UK			

Česky	Společnost Lexmark International, Inc. tímto prohlašuje, že výrobek tento výrobek je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved, at dette produkt overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch	Hiermit erklärt Lexmark International, Inc., dass sich das Gerät dieses Gerät in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Ελληνική	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Η LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ΑΥΤΌ ΤΟ ΠΡΟΪ́ΟΝ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΌΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΈΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
English	Hereby, Lexmark International, Inc., declares that this type of equipment is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español	Por medio de la presente, Lexmark International, Inc. declara que este producto cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Eesti	Käesolevaga kinnitab Lexmark International, Inc., et seade see toode vastab direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele muudele asjakohastele sätetele.
Suomi	Lexmark International, Inc. vakuuttaa täten, että tämä tuote on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja muiden sitä koskevien direktiivin ehtojen mukainen.
Français	Par la présente, Lexmark International, Inc. déclare que l'appareil ce produit est conforme aux exigences fondamentales et autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Magyar	Alulírott, Lexmark International, Inc. nyilatkozom, hogy a termék megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Íslenska	Hér með lýsir Lexmark International, Inc. yfir því að þessi vara er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Italiano	Con la presente Lexmark International, Inc. dichiara che questo questo prodotto è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski	Ar šo Lexmark International, Inc. deklarē, ka šis izstrādājums atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių	Šiuo Lexmark International, Inc. deklaruoja, kad šis produktas atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB direktyvos nuostatas.
Malti	Bil-preżenti, Lexmark International, Inc., jiddikjara li dan il-prodott huwa konformi mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma dispożizzjonijiet oħrajn relevanti li jinsabu fid-Direttiva 1999/5/KE.
Nederlands	Hierbij verklaart Lexmark International, Inc. dat het toestel dit product in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Norsk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved at dette produktet er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Polski	Niniejszym Lexmark International, Inc. oświadcza, że niniejszy produkt jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português	A Lexmark International Inc. declara que este este produto está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Diretiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensky	Lexmark International, Inc. týmto vyhlasuje, že tento produkt spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia smernice 1999/5/ES.
Slovensko	Lexmark International, Inc. izjavlja, da je ta izdelek v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Svenska	Härmed intygar Lexmark International, Inc. att denna produkt står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

# **Statement of Limited Warranty**

Lexmark C792e, C792de, C792dte, C792dhe

### Lexmark International, Inc., Lexington, KY

This limited warranty applies to the United States and Canada. For customers outside the U.S., refer to the country-specific warranty information that came with your product.

This limited warranty applies to this product only if it was originally purchased for your use, and not for resale, from Lexmark or a Lexmark Remarketer, referred to in this statement as "Remarketer."

#### **Limited warranty**

Lexmark warrants that this product:

- —Is manufactured from new parts, or new and serviceable used parts, which perform like new parts
- —Is, during normal use, free from defects in material and workmanship

If this product does not function as warranted during the warranty period, contact a Remarketer or Lexmark for repair or replacement (at Lexmark's option).

If this product is a feature or option, this statement applies only when that feature or option is used with the product for which it was intended. To obtain warranty service, you may be required to present the feature or option with the product.

If you transfer this product to another user, warranty service under the terms of this statement is available to that user for the remainder of the warranty period. You should transfer proof of original purchase and this statement to that user.

### **Limited warranty service**

The warranty period starts on the date of original purchase as shown on the purchase receipt and ends 12 months later provided that the warranty period for any supplies and for any maintenance items included with the printer shall end earlier if it, or its original contents, are substantially used up, depleted, or consumed.

To obtain warranty service you may be required to present proof of original purchase. You may be required to deliver your product to the Remarketer or Lexmark, or ship it prepaid and suitably packaged to a Lexmark designated location. You are responsible for loss of, or damage to, a product in transit to the Remarketer or the Lexmark designated location.

When warranty service involves the exchange of a product or part, the item replaced becomes the property of the Remarketer or Lexmark. The replacement may be a new or repaired item.

The replacement item assumes the remaining warranty period of the original product.

Replacement is not available to you if the product you present for exchange is defaced, altered, in need of a repair not included in warranty service, damaged beyond repair, or if the product is not free of all legal obligations, restrictions, liens, and encumbrances.

Before you present this product for warranty service, remove all print cartridges, programs, data, and removable storage media (unless directed otherwise by Lexmark).

For further explanation of your warranty alternatives and the nearest Lexmark authorized servicer in your area contact Lexmark on the World Wide Web at http://support.lexmark.com.

Remote technical support is provided for this product throughout its warranty period. For products no longer covered by a Lexmark warranty, technical support may not be available or only be available for a fee.

### **Extent of limited warranty**

Lexmark does not warrant uninterrupted or error-free operation of any product or the durability or longevity of prints produced by any product.

Warranty service does not include repair of failures caused by:

- -Modification or unauthorized attachments
- —Accidents, misuse, abuse or use inconsistent with Lexmark user's guides, manuals, instructions or guidance
- -Unsuitable physical or operating environment
- —Maintenance by anyone other than Lexmark or a Lexmark authorized servicer
- -Operation of a product beyond the limit of its duty cycle
- —Use of printing media outside of Lexmark specifications
- -Refurbishment, repair, refilling or remanufacture by a third party of products, supplies or parts
- -Products, supplies, parts, materials (such as toners and inks), software, or interfaces not furnished by Lexmark

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NEITHER LEXMARK NOR ITS THIRD PARTY SUPPLIERS OR REMARKETERS MAKE ANY OTHER WARRANTY OR CONDITION OF ANY KIND, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THIS PRODUCT, AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND SATISFACTORY QUALITY. ANY WARRANTIES THAT MAY NOT BE DISCLAIMED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD. NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WILL APPLY AFTER THIS PERIOD. ALL INFORMATION, SPECIFICATIONS, PRICES, AND SERVICES ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE AT ANY TIME WITHOUT NOTICE.

#### Limitation of liability

Your sole remedy under this limited warranty is set forth in this document. For any claim concerning performance or nonperformance of Lexmark or a Remarketer for this product under this limited warranty, you may recover actual damages up to the limit set forth in the following paragraph.

Lexmark's liability for actual damages from any cause whatsoever will be limited to the amount you paid for the product that caused the damages. This limitation of liability will not apply to claims by you for bodily injury or damage to real property or tangible personal property for which Lexmark is legally liable. IN NO EVENT WILL LEXMARK BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, LOST SAVINGS, INCIDENTAL DAMAGE, OR OTHER ECONOMIC OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES. This is true even if you advise Lexmark or a Remarketer of the possibility of such damages. Lexmark is not liable for any claim by you based on a third party claim.

This limitation of remedies also applies to claims against any Suppliers and Remarketers of Lexmark. Lexmark's and its Suppliers' and Remarketers' limitations of remedies are not cumulative. Such Suppliers and Remarketers are intended beneficiaries of this limitation.

#### **Additional rights**

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, or do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the limitations or exclusions contained above may not apply to you.

This limited warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

# LEXMARK SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THIS PRODUCT: BY USING THIS PRODUCT, YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY ALL THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH THE TERMS OF THIS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY RETURN THE PRODUCT UNUSED AND REQUEST A REFUND OF THE AMOUNT YOU PAID. IF YOU ARE INSTALLING THIS PRODUCT FOR USE BY OTHER PARTIES, YOU AGREE TO INFORM THE USERS THAT USE OF THE PRODUCT INDICATES ACCEPTANCE OF THESE TERMS.

#### LEXMARK SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT

This License Agreement ("Software License Agreement") is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or a single entity) and Lexmark International, Inc. ("Lexmark") that, to the extent your Lexmark product or Software Program is not otherwise subject to a written software license agreement between you and Lexmark or its suppliers, governs your use of any Software Program installed on or provided by Lexmark for use in connection with your Lexmark product. The term "Software Program" includes machine-readable instructions, audio/visual content (such as images and recordings), and associated media, printed materials and electronic documentation, whether incorporated into, distributed with or for use with your Lexmark product.

- 1 STATEMENT OF SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY. Lexmark warrants that the media (e.g., diskette or compact disk) on which the Software Program (if any) is furnished is free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use during the warranty period. The warranty period is ninety (90) days and commences on the date the Software Program is delivered to the original end-user. This limited warranty applies only to Software Program media purchased new from Lexmark or an Authorized Lexmark Reseller or Distributor. Lexmark will replace the Software Program should it be determined that the media does not conform to this limited warranty.
- 2 DISCLAIMER AND LIMITATION OF WARRANTIES. EXCEPT AS PROVIDED IN THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT AND TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, LEXMARK AND ITS SUPPLIERS PROVIDE THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM "AS IS" AND HEREBY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND ABSENCE OF VIRUSES, ALL WITH REGARD TO THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM. TO THE EXTENT LEXMARK CANNOT BY LAW DISCLAIM ANY COMPONENT OF THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, LEXMARK LIMITS THE DURATION OF SUCH WARRANTIES TO THE 90-DAY TERM OF THE EXPRESS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY.

This Agreement is to be read in conjunction with certain statutory provisions, as that may be in force from time to time, that imply warranties or conditions or impose obligations on Lexmark that cannot be excluded or modified. If any such provisions apply, then to the extent Lexmark is able, Lexmark hereby limits its liability for breach of those provisions to one of the following: providing you a replacement copy of the Software Program or reimbursement of the price paid for the Software Program.

The Software Program may include internet links to other software applications and/or internet web pages hosted and operated by third parties unaffiliated with Lexmark. You acknowledge and agree that Lexmark is not responsible in any way for the hosting, performance, operation, maintenance, or content of, such software applications and/or internet web pages.

- 3 LIMITATION OF REMEDY. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL LIABILITY OF LEXMARK UNDER THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT IS EXPRESSLY LIMITED TO THE GREATER OF THE PRICE PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM AND FIVE U.S. DOLLARS (OR THE EQUIVALENT IN LOCAL CURRENCY). YOUR SOLE REMEDY AGAINST LEXMARK IN ANY DISPUTE UNDER THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT SHALL BE TO SEEK TO RECOVER ONE OF THESE AMOUNTS, UPON PAYMENT OF WHICH LEXMARK SHALL BE RELEASED AND DISCHARGED OF ALL FURTHER OBLIGATIONS AND LIABILITY TO YOU.
  - IN NO EVENT WILL LEXMARK, ITS SUPPLIERS, SUBSIDIARIES, OR RESELLERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, EXEMPLARY, PUNITIVE, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOST PROFITS OR REVENUES, LOST SAVINGS, INTERRUPTION OF USE OR ANY LOSS OF, INACCURACY IN, OR DAMAGE TO, DATA OR RECORDS, FOR CLAIMS OF THIRD PARTIES, OR DAMAGE TO REAL OR TANGIBLE PROPERTY, FOR LOSS OF PRIVACY ARISING OUT OR IN ANY WAY RELATED TO THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM, OR OTHERWISE IN CONNECTION WITH ANY PROVISION OF THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT), REGARDLESS OF THE NATURE OF THE CLAIM, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO BREACH OF WARRANTY OR CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR STRICT LIABILITY), AND EVEN IF LEXMARK, OR ITS SUPPLIERS, AFFILIATES, OR REMARKETERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, OR FOR ANY CLAIM BY YOU BASED ON A THIRD-PARTY CLAIM, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THIS EXCLUSION OF DAMAGES IS DETERMINED LEGALLY INVALID. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE-STATED REMEDIES FAIL OF THEIR ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.
- **4 U.S.A. STATE LAWS**. This Software Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts or the exclusion of limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitations may not apply to you.
- **5 LICENSE GRANT**. Lexmark grants you the following rights provided you comply with all terms and conditions of this License Agreement:
  - **a** Use. You may Use one (1) copy of the Software Program. The term "Use" means storing, loading, installing, executing, or displaying the Software Program. If Lexmark has licensed the Software Program to you for concurrent use, you must limit the number of authorized users to the number specified in your agreement with Lexmark. You may not separate the components of the Software Program for use on more than one computer. You agree that you will not Use the Software Program, in whole or in part, in any manner that has the effect of overriding, modifying, eliminating, obscuring, altering or de-emphasizing the visual appearance of any trademark, trade name, trade dress or intellectual property notice that appears on any computer display screens normally generated by, or as a result of, the Software Program.
  - **b** Copying. You may make one (1) copy of the Software Program solely for purposes of backup, archiving, or installation, provided the copy contains all of the original Software Program's proprietary notices. You may not copy the Software Program to any public or distributed network.
  - **c** Reservation of Rights. The Software Program, including all fonts, is copyrighted and owned by Lexmark International, Inc. and/or its suppliers. Lexmark reserves all rights not expressly granted to you in this License Agreement.
  - **d** Freeware. Notwithstanding the terms and conditions of this License Agreement, all or any portion of the Software Program that constitutes software provided under public license by third parties ("Freeware") is licensed to you subject to the terms and conditions of the software license agreement accompanying such Freeware, whether in the form of a discrete agreement, shrink-wrap license, or electronic license terms at the

time of download. Use of the Freeware by you shall be governed entirely by the terms and conditions of such license.

- **6 TRANSFER**. You may transfer the Software Program to another end-user. Any transfer must include all software components, media, printed materials, and this License Agreement and you may not retain copies of the Software Program or components thereof. The transfer may not be an indirect transfer, such as a consignment. Prior to the transfer, the end-user receiving the transferred Software Program must agree to all these License Agreement terms. Upon transfer of the Software Program, your license is automatically terminated. You may not rent, sublicense, or assign the Software Program except to the extent provided in this License Agreement, and any attempt to do so shall be void.
- **7 UPGRADES**. To Use a Software Program identified as an upgrade, you must first be licensed to the original Software Program identified by Lexmark as eligible for the upgrade. After upgrading, you may no longer use the original Software Program that formed the basis for your upgrade eligibility.
- **8 LIMITATION ON REVERSE ENGINEERING.** You may not alter, decrypt, reverse engineer, reverse assemble, reverse compile or otherwise translate the Software Program, except as and to the extent expressly permitted to do so by applicable law for the purposes of inter-operability, error correction, and security testing. If you have such statutory rights, you will notify Lexmark in writing of any intended reverse engineering, reverse assembly, or reverse compilation. You may not decrypt the Software Program unless necessary for the legitimate Use of the Software Program.
- **9 ADDITIONAL SOFTWARE**. This License Agreement applies to updates or supplements to the original Software Program provided by Lexmark unless Lexmark provides other terms along with the update or supplement.
- 10 TERM. This License Agreement is effective unless terminated or rejected. You may reject or terminate this license at any time by destroying all copies of the Software Program, together with all modifications, documentation, and merged portions in any form, or as otherwise described herein. Lexmark may terminate your license upon notice if you fail to comply with any of the terms of this License Agreement. Upon such termination, you agree to destroy all copies of the Software Program together with all modifications, documentation, and merged portions in any form.
- **11 TAXES**. You agree that you are responsible for payment of any taxes including, without limitation, any goods and services and personal property taxes, resulting from this Agreement or your Use of the Software Program.
- **12 LIMITATION ON ACTIONS**. No action, regardless of form, arising out of this Agreement may be brought by either party more than two years after the cause of action has arisen, except as provided under applicable law.
- **13 APPLICABLE LAW**. This Agreement is governed by the laws of the Commonwealth of Kentucky, United States of America. No choice of law rules in any jurisdiction shall apply. The UN Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.
- 14 UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS. The Software Program has been developed entirely at private expense. Rights of the United States Government to use the Software Program is as set forth in this Agreement and as restricted in DFARS 252.227-7014 and in similar FAR provisions (or any equivalent agency regulation or contract clause).
- 15 CONSENT TO USE OF DATA. You agree that Lexmark, its affiliates, and agents may collect and use information you provide in relation to support services performed with respect to the Software Program and requested by you. Lexmark agrees not to use this information in a form that personally identifies you except to the extent necessary to provide such services.
- **16 EXPORT RESTRICTIONS**. You may not (a) acquire, ship, transfer, or reexport, directly or indirectly, the Software Program or any direct product therefrom, in violation of any applicable export laws or (b) permit the Software Program to be used for any purpose prohibited by such export laws, including, without limitation, nuclear, chemical, or biological weapons proliferation.
- 17 AGREEMENT TO CONTRACT ELECTRONICALLY. You and Lexmark agree to form this License Agreement electronically. This means that when you click the "Agree" or "Yes" button on this page or use this product, you acknowledge your agreement to these License Agreement terms and conditions and that you are doing so with the intent to "sign" a contract with Lexmark.

- 18 CAPACITY AND AUTHORITY TO CONTRACT. You represent that you are of the legal age of majority in the place you sign this License Agreement and, if applicable, you are duly authorized by your employer or principal to enter into this contract.
- 19 ENTIRE AGREEMENT. This License Agreement (including any addendum or amendment to this License Agreement that is included with the Software Program) is the entire agreement between you and Lexmark relating to the Software Program. Except as otherwise provided for herein, these terms and conditions supersede all prior or contemporaneous oral or written communications, proposals, and representations with respect to the Software Program or any other subject matter covered by this License Agreement (except to the extent such extraneous terms do not conflict with the terms of this License Agreement, any other written agreement signed by you and Lexmark relating to your Use of the Software Program). To the extent any Lexmark policies or programs for support services conflict with the terms of this License Agreement, the terms of this License Agreement shall control.

#### MICROSOFT CORPORATION NOTICES

- 1 This product may incorporate intellectual property owned by Microsoft Corporation. The terms and conditions upon which Microsoft is licensing such intellectual property may be found at <a href="http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?Linkld=52369">http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?Linkld=52369</a>.
- 2 This product is based on Microsoft Print Schema technology. You may find the terms and conditions upon which Microsoft is licensing such intellectual property at <a href="http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=83288">http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=83288</a>.

# ADOBE SYSTEMS INCORPORATED NOTICE

Contains Flash®, Flash® Lite™ and/or Reader® technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated

This Product contains Adobe® Flash® player software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright © 1995-2007 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Reader and Flash are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

# Index

### **Numerics**

1565 Emulation error, load emulation option 189 2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder installing 39 200 paper jam 165 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder loading 65 201 paper jam 165 202-203 paper jams 166 230 paper jam 167 231-239 paper jams 168 24x paper jam 168 250 paper jam 169 31.xx Missing or Defective [color] cartridge 182 32.xx [color] cartridge part number unsupported by device 182 34 Incorrect paper size, open [src] 182 35 Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature 182 36 Printer service required 182 37 Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation 183 37 Insufficient memory to collate iob 183 37 Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted 183 37 Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored 183 38 Memory full 183 39 Complex page, some data may not have printed 183 40 [color] invalid refill, change cartridge 183 400-403 paper jams 170 431-454 paper jams 171 455 staple jam 171 456–458 paper jams 171 460-461 paper jams 170 51 Defective flash detected 184 52 Not enough free space in flash memory for resources 184 53 Unformatted flash detected 184

54 Network [x] software error 184

54 Serial option [x] error 184

54 Standard network software error 184 55 Unsupported option in slot [x] 185 550-sheet tray installing 39 550-sheet tray (standard or optional) loading 62 56 Parallel port [x] disabled 185 56 Serial port [x] disabled 185 56 Standard parallel port disabled 185 56 Standard USB port disabled 185 56 USB port [x] disabled 185 57 Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored 186 58 Input config error 186 58 Too many bins attached 186 58 Too many disks installed 186 58 Too many flash options installed 186 58 Too many trays attached 187 59 Incompatible output bin [x] 187 61 Remove defective disk 187 62 Disk full 187 80.xx Fuser life warning 187 80.xx Fuser missing 188 80.xx Fuser near life warning 187 80.xx Replace fuser 188 82.xx Replace waste toner bottle 188 82.xx Waste toner bottle missing 188 82.xx Waste toner bottle nearly full 188 83.xx Replace transfer module 188 83.xx Transfer module life warning 188 83.xx Transfer module missing 188 88.xx [Color] cartridge critically low 189 88.xx [color] cartridge low 189 88.xx [color] cartridge nearly low 188

#### Α

accessing the Embedded Web Server 17 accessing the system board 23 Active NIC menu 102 Adjusting color 174 adjusting display brightness 59 adjusting Sleep Mode 58 adjusting toner darkness 78 AppleTalk menu 107 applications list home screen 17 applications, home screen Background and Idle Screen 17 Eco-Settings 17 Forms and Favorites 17 Remote Operator Panel 17 Showroom 17 assigning a custom paper type name 71 attaching cables 42 attaching the system board cover 23 available internal options 21 avoiding paper jams 163

#### В

Background and Idle Screen 17
Bin Setup menu 100
black-and-white printing 78
blank pages 197
buttons, printer control panel 11
buttons, touch screen
using 14

### C

cables
Ethernet 42
USB 42
calling customer support 211
canceling
print job, from computer 85
canceling a print job
from a computer 85
from the printer control panel 85
cannot open Embedded Web
Server 211

card stock loading in multipurpose feeder 67 tips 83 Change [paper source] to [custom string] 175 Change [paper source] to [custom string | load [orientation] 175 Change [paper source] to [custom type name 174 Change [paper source] to [custom type name] load [orientation] 174 Change [paper source] to [paper size] [paper type] 175 Change [paper source] to [paper size] [paper type] load [orientation] 175 checking an unresponsive printer 174 checking printer status on Embedded Web Server 160 checking printer status using the Embedded Web Server 160 checking status of supplies 152 checking the status of supplies 152 checking the virtual display using the Embedded Web Server 160 checking virtual display using the Embedded Web Server 160 cleaning exterior of the printer 150 cleaning kit ordering 154 cleaning the printhead lenses 150 Close [tray] door 175 Close finisher side door 176 E Close finisher top cover 176 Close front door 176 Close left side door 175 Close paper transport cover 175 confidential print jobs 83 printing from a Macintosh computer 84 printing from Windows 84 Confidential Print menu 115 configuration information wireless network 45 Configure MP menu 93 configuring port settings 53 conservation settings brightness, adjusting 59

Eco-Mode 57 Hibernate Mode 58 Quiet Mode 57 Sleep Mode 58 conserving supplies 56 contacting customer support 211 corrupted printer hard disk 176 Custom Bin Names menu 99 custom name configuring 71 Custom Names menu 99 custom paper type assigning 71 custom paper type name creating 70 Custom Type [x] changing name 70 changing paper type 71 Custom Types menu 98

Default Source menu 89
directory list
printing 85
disk wiping 147
Disk Wiping menu 116
display troubleshooting
display is blank 190
display shows only diamonds 190
display, printer control panel 11
adjusting brightness 59
disposing of printer hard disk 145
documents, printing
from Macintosh 78
from Windows 78

Eco-Mode setting 57
Eco-Settings 18
Embedded Web Server
accessing 17, 160
administrator settings 160
checking printer status 160
checking supplies 152
functions 160
networking settings 160
problem accessing 211
setting up e-mail alerts 161
using 160

**Embedded Web Server** Administrator's Guide where to find 160 emission notices 214, 215, 217, 218, 219 Empty the hole punch box 176 encrypting the printer hard disk 148 envelopes loading in multipurpose feeder 67 tips on using 81 environmental settings conserving supplies 56 display brightness, adjusting 59 Eco-Mode 57 Hibernate Mode 58 Quiet Mode 57 Sleep Mode 58 erasing hard disk memory 147 erasing non-volatile memory 146 erasing volatile memory 146 Ethernet networking Macintosh 51 Windows 51 Ethernet port 42 exit bins linking 70 exporting a configuration using the Embedded Web Server 19 exporting a configuration using the Embedded Web Server 19 exterior of the printer cleaning 150 e-mail alerts low supply levels 161 paper jam 161 setting up 161

#### F

factory defaults
restoring 162
FAQ about color printing 208
FCC notices 214, 218
fiber optic
network setup 51
finding more information about the printer 8
finisher
finishing features 40
supported paper sizes 40
finisher features 40

Finishing menu 132 firmware card installing 28 flash drive printing from 79 Flash Drive menu 126 flash drives supported file types 80 flash memory card	importing a configuration using the Embedded Web Server 19 importing a configuration using the Embedded Web Server 19 Insert hole punch box 177 Insert staple cartridge 177 Install bin [x] 177 Install envelope feeder 177	250 paper jam 169 400–403 paper jams 170 431–454 paper jams 171 455 staple jam 171 456–458 paper jams 171 460–461 paper jams 170 Job Accounting menu 130
installing 28	Install Tray [x] 177	labels, paper
troubleshooting 195 font sample list printing 84 Forms and Favorites 18 fuser or transfer module	installing a memory card 26 installing an Internal Solutions Port 29 installing on a wireless network using Windows 46	tips 82 letterhead loading, 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder 65 loading, multipurpose feeder 81
ordering 153	installing options order of installation 39	loading, trays 81 letterhead printing 81
G	installing printer	light colored line, white line, or
General Settings menu 119	on wireless network 46	incorrectly colored line appears on
Green settings	installing printer hard disk 33 installing printer on a network	prints 200
Eco-Mode 57	wired networking 51	linking
Hibernate Mode 58	installing printer on a wireless	exit bins 70
Quiet Mode 57	network	linking exit bins 70 linking trays 69
н	using Macintosh 48	Load Manual Feeder with [custom
	installing printer software 44	string] 179
hard disk	adding options 45	Load Manual Feeder with [custom
wiping 147 hard disk memory	installing the 2,000-sheet	type name] 179
erasing 147	high-capacity feeder 39	Load Manual Feeder with [paper
held jobs 83	installing the 550-sheet tray 39	type] [paper size] 179
printing from a Macintosh	internal print server	Load staples 179
computer 84	troubleshooting 196 Internal Solutions Port	loading
printing from Windows 84	changing port settings 53	2000-sheet high-capacity
Help menu 143	installing 29	feeder 65
Hibernate Mode	troubleshooting 195	550-sheet tray (standard or
using 58	IPv6 menu 105	optional) 62 letterhead in 2000-sheet
hiding icons on the home screen 17		high-capacity feeder 65
home screen	J	letterhead in multipurpose
applications 17	jam locations 163	feeder 81
buttons, understanding 13	jam numbers	multipurpose feeder 67
hiding icons 17 showing icons 17	meaning 163	loading card stock
home screen applications	jams	in multipurpose feeder 67
using 17	avoiding 163	loading envelopes
home screen buttons	locating 163	in multipurpose feeder 67
understanding 13	jams, clearing	loading the multipurpose feeder 67
HTML menu 142	200 paper jam 165	loading the standard tray 62
	201 paper jam 165	loading transparencies
I	202–203 paper jams 166	in multipurpose feeder 67
Image menu 143	230 paper jam 167 231–239 paper jams 168 24x paper jam 168	lock, security 22

M	Supplies 88	staple cartridges 153
memory	TCP/IP 104	waste toner bottle 153
types installed on printer 145	Utilities 137	ordering a print cartridge 152
memory card	Wireless 106	
installing 26	XPS 137	Р
troubleshooting 196	menus diagram 87	paper
menu settings page	Miscellaneous Security Settings	characteristics 72
printing 43	menu 115	letterhead 73
menus	moving the printer 158, 159	preprinted forms 73
Active NIC 102	moving your printer 9	recycled 74
AppleTalk 107	multipurpose feeder	selecting 73
Bin Setup 100	loading 67	storing 74
Confidential Print 115		unacceptable 73
Configure MP 93	N	Universal Paper Size 99
Custom Bin Names 99	Network [x] menu 102	Universal size setting 61
Custom Names 99	Network Card menu 104	using recycled 56
Custom Types 98	network options 21	Paper changes needed 179
Default Source 89	Network Reports menu 103	paper feed troubleshooting
diagram of 87	network setup page	message remains after jam is
Disk Wiping 116	printing 44	cleared 197
Finishing 132	Networking Guide	paper jams
Flash Drive 126	where to find 160	avoiding 163
General Settings 119	noise emission levels 215	paper jams, clearing
Help 143	non-volatile memory 145	200 paper jam 165
HTML 142	erasing 146	201 paper jam 165
Image 143	notices 213, 214, 215, 216, 217,	202–203 paper jams 166
IPv6 105	218, 219, 220	230 paper jam 167
Job Accounting 130		231–239 paper jams 168
Miscellaneous Security	0	24x paper jam 168
Settings 115	options	250 paper jam 169
Network [x] 102	2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder,	400–403 paper jams 170
Network Card 104	installing 39	431–454 paper jams 171
Network Reports 103	550-sheet tray, installing 39	456–458 paper jams 171
Paper Loading 97	firmware card 28	460–461 paper jams 170
Paper Size/Type 90	firmware cards 21	Paper Loading menu 97
Paper Texture 93	flash memory card 28	paper size
Paper Weight 95	Internal Solutions Port,	setting 61
Parallel [x] 109	installing 29	Paper Size/Type menu 90
PCL Emul 139	list 21	paper sizes
PDF 138	memory card, installing 26	supported by printer 75
PostScript 138	memory cards 21	Paper Texture menu 93
Quality 134	network 21	paper type
Reports 101	order of installation 39	setting 61
Security Audit Log 117	ports 21	paper types
Serial [x] 111	printer hard disk, installing 33	duplex support 77
Set Date and Time 118	printer hard disk, removing 38	supported by printer 77
Setup 129	updating in printer driver 45	where to load 77
SMTP Setup menu 113	ordering	Paper Weight menu 95
Standard Network 102	cleaning kit 154	Parallel [x] menu 109
Standard USB 107	fuser or transfer module 153	PCL Emul menu 139
Substitute Size 93	print cartridges 152	PDF menu 138

port settings paper curl 201 40 [color] invalid refill, change configuring 53 paper frequently jams 196 cartridge 183 print job takes longer than 51 Defective flash detected 184 PostScript menu 138 print cartridge expected 191 52 Not enough free space in flash replacing 154 tray linking does not work 192 memory for resources 184 print cartridges unexpected page breaks 193 53 Unformatted flash ordering 152 printer detected 184 print irregularities 201 configured models 10 54 Network [x] software error 184 finishing features 40 54 Serial option [x] error 184 print job canceling, from computer 85 minimum clearances 9 54 Standard network software print quality moving 9, 158, 159 error 184 cleaning the printhead lenses 150 selecting a location 9 55 Unsupported option in slot print quality troubleshooting shipping 159 [x] 185 black streaks on a page 205 printer configurations 10 56 Parallel port [x] disabled 185 blank pages 197 printer control panel 56 Serial port [x] disabled 185 characters have jagged edges 198 56 Standard parallel port adjusting brightness 59 clipped images 198 factory defaults, restoring 162 disabled 185 fine horizontal lines 198 understanding 11 56 Standard USB port gray background on prints 199 printer hard disk disabled 185 light colored line, white line, or disposing of 145 56 USB port [x] disabled 185 incorrectly colored line appears encrypting 148 57 Configuration change, some installing 33 held jobs were not restored 186 on prints 200 poor transparency quality 207 removing 38 58 Input config error 186 print irregularities 201 troubleshooting 195 58 Too many bins attached 186 printer hard disk encryption 148 58 Too many disks installed 186 print is too dark 202 print is too light 202 printer information 58 Too many flash options repeating print defects 203 where to find 8 installed 186 shadow images appear on printer messages 58 Too many trays attached 187 prints 199 1565 Emulation error, load 59 Incompatible output bin skewed print 204 emulation option 189 [x] 187 solid color or black pages appear on 31.xx Missing or Defective [color] 61 Remove defective disk 187 prints 204 cartridge 182 62 Disk full 187 streaked horizontal lines appear on 32.xx [color] cartridge part number 80.xx Fuser life warning 187 prints 205 unsupported by device 182 80.xx Fuser missing 188 toner fog or background 34 Incorrect paper size, open 80.xx Fuser near life warning 187 shading 206 [src] 182 80.xx Replace fuser 188 toner rubs off 206 82.xx Replace waste toner 35 Insufficient memory to support uneven print density 207 Resource Save feature 182 bottle 188 white streaks on a page 205 36 Printer service required 182 82.xx Waste toner bottle print troubleshooting 37 Insufficient memory for Flash missing 188 error reading flash drive 190 Memory Defragment 82.xx Waste toner bottle nearly held jobs do not print 191 operation 183 full 188 incorrect characters print 192 37 Insufficient memory to collate 83.xx Replace transfer incorrect margins 200 job 183 module 188 jammed pages are not 37 Insufficient memory, some Held 83.xx Transfer module life reprinted 197 Jobs were deleted 183 warning 188 37 Insufficient memory, some held job prints from wrong tray 192 83.xx Transfer module job prints on wrong paper 192 jobs will not be restored 183 missing 188 jobs do not print 190 38 Memory full 183 88.xx [Color] cartridge critically Large jobs do not collate 192 39 Complex page, some data may low 189 multiple-language PDF files do not not have printed 183 88.xx [color] cartridge low 189 print 189

88.xx [color] cartridge nearly Remove packaging material, [area printing confidential and other held low 188 namel 181 iobs Adjusting color 174 Remove paper from [linked bin set from a Macintosh computer 84 an error has occurred with the USB name] 181 from Windows 84 drive 174 Remove paper from all bins 181 printing from a flash drive 79 Change [paper source] to [custom Remove paper from bin [x] 181 printing in black and white 78 string] 175 Remove paper from standard printing on letterhead 81 Change [paper source] to [custom output bin 180 publications string load [orientation] 175 Restore held jobs? 181 where to find 8 Change [paper source] to [custom Slide finisher to the left 181 Some held jobs were not type name 174 Q Change [paper source] to [custom restored 181 Quality menu 134 type name] load Supply needed to complete Quiet Mode [orientation] 174 job 181 print quality troubleshooting 198 Change [paper source] to [paper Unsupported disk 181 size] [paper type] 175 Unsupported USB device, please R Change [paper source] to [paper remove 176 Reattach bin [x] 180 size] [paper type] load printer options troubleshooting Reattach bin [x] - [y] 180 [orientation] 175 2,000-sheet drawer problems 194 reattaching the system board Close [tray] door 175 cannot detect flash memory cover 23 Close finisher side door 176 card 195 recycled paper Close finisher top cover 176 cannot detect printer hard using 56, 74 Close front door 176 disk 195 recycling Close left side door 175 internal print server 196 Lexmark packaging 60 Close paper transport cover 175 Internal Solutions Port 195 Lexmark products 60 Disk corrupted 176 memory card 196 toner cartridges 60 Disk near full. Securely clearing disk option not working 193 WEEE statement 215 paper tray problems 194 space. 176 reducing printer noise 57 Disk problem 176 USB/parallel interface card 196 Remote Operator Panel 19 Empty the hole punch box 176 printer software Remove packaging material, [area Insert hole punch box 177 installing 44 name] 181 Insert staple cartridge 177 printhead lenses Remove paper from [linked bin set cleaning 150 Insert Tray [x] 177 name] 181 Install bin [x] 177 printing Remove paper from all bins 181 Install envelope feeder 177 black-and-white 78 Remove paper from bin [x] 181 Install Tray [x] 177 canceling, from printer control Remove paper from standard output Load [src] with [custom panel 85 bin 180 string 178 directory list 85 removing printer hard disk 38 Load [src] with [custom type font sample list 84 repeat print jobs 83 name] 178 from flash drive 79 printing from a Macintosh Load [src] with [size] 178 from Macintosh 78 computer 84 Load [src] with [type] [size] 178 from Windows 78 printing from Windows 84 Load Manual Feeder with [custom menu settings page 43 repeating print defects 203 string] 179 network setup page 44 replacing a print cartridge 154 Load Manual Feeder with [custom on letterhead 81 replacing the waste toner type name] 179 printing a directory list 85 bottle 157 printing a document 78 Load Manual Feeder with [paper reports type] [paper size] 179 printing a font sample list 84 viewing 161 Load staples 179 printing a menu settings page 43 Reports menu 101 Paper changes needed 179 printing a network setup page 44 Reattach bin [x] 180

Reattach bin [x] - [y] 180

reserve print jobs 83	staple jam, clearing	toner darkness
printing from a Macintosh	455 staple jam 171	adjusting 78
computer 84	statement of volatility 145	toner rubs off 206
printing from Windows 84	status of supplies	touch screen
Restore held jobs? 181	checking 152	buttons, using 14
restoring factory default	storing	transparencies
settings 162	paper 74	loading 81
_	supplies 151	loading in multipurpose feeder 67
S	storing print jobs 83	tips on using 81
safety information 6, 7	streaked horizontal lines appear on	using 81
Security Audit Log menu 117	prints 205	trays
security lock 22	streaks appear on a page 205	linking 69
selecting a location for the	Substitute Size menu 93	unlinking 70
printer 9	supplies	troubleshooting
Serial [x] menu 111	checking status 152	an application error has occurred 193
serial printing	checking, from printer control panel 152	cannot open Embedded Web
setting up 54	checking, using the Embedded Web	Server 211
Set Date and Time menu 118	Server 152	checking an unresponsive
setting	conserving 56	printer 174
TCP/IP address 104	storing 151	contacting customer support 211
setting the paper size 61	using recycled paper 56	FAQ about color printing 208
setting the paper type 61	Supplies menu 88	troubleshooting, display
setting the Universal paper size 61	supplies, ordering	display is blank 190
setting up e-mail alerts using the	cleaning kit 154	display shows only diamonds 190
Embedded Web Server 161	fuser or transfer module 153	troubleshooting, paper feed
setting up serial printing 54	print cartridges 152	message remains after jam is
setting up the printer on a wired network	staple cartridges 153	cleared 197
(Macintosh) 51	waste toner bottle 153	troubleshooting, print
on a wired network (Windows) 51	Supply needed to complete job 181	error reading flash drive 190
Setup menu 129	supported flash drives 80	held jobs do not print 191
shadow images appear on	supported paper sizes 75	incorrect characters print 192
prints 199	supported paper types and	incorrect margins 200
shipping the printer 159	weights 77	jammed pages are not
showing icons on the home	system board	reprinted 197
screen 17	accessing 23	job prints from wrong tray 192
Showroom 19	system board cover	job prints on wrong paper 192
Sleep Mode	attaching 23	jobs do not print 190
adjusting 58	reattaching 23	Large jobs do not collate 192
Slide finisher to the left 181		multiple-language PDF files do not
SMTP Setup menu 113	T	print 189
solid color or black pages appear on	TCP/IP menu 104	paper curl 201
prints 204	tips	paper frequently jams 196
Some held jobs were not	card stock 83	print job takes longer than
restored 181	labels, paper 82	expected 191
Standard Network menu 102	on using envelopes 81	tray linking does not work 192
standard tray	on using letterhead 81	unexpected page breaks 193
loading 62	on using transparencies 81	troubleshooting, print quality
Standard USB menu 107	tips on using envelopes 81	black streaks on a page 205
staple cartridges	tips on using letterhead 81	blank pages 197
ordering 153	toner cartridges	characters have jagged edges 198
	recycling 60	clipped images 198

fine horizontal lines 198 gray background on prints 199 light colored line, white line, or incorrectly colored line appears on prints 200 poor transparency quality 207 print irregularities 201 print is too dark 202 print is too light 202 repeating print defects 203 shadow images appear on prints 199 skewed print 204 solid color or black pages appear on prints 204 streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 205 toner fog or background shading 206 toner rubs off 206 uneven print density 207 white streaks on a page 205 troubleshooting, printer options 2,000-sheet drawer problems 194 cannot detect flash memory card 195 cannot detect printer hard disk 195 internal print server 196 Internal Solutions Port 195 memory card 196 option not working 193 paper tray problems 194 USB/parallel interface card 196

### U

understanding the home screen 13 understanding the printer control panel 11 uneven print density 207 unexpected page breaks 193 Universal Paper Size 99 setting 61 Universal Setup menu 99 unlinking trays 70 Unsupported USB device, please remove 176 updating options in printer driver 45 USB port 42 USB/parallel interface card troubleshooting 196

using Eco-Mode 57
using Hibernate Mode 58
using Quiet Mode 57
using recycled paper 56
using the Embedded Web
Server 160
using the touch-screen buttons 14
Utilities menu 137

#### V

verify print jobs 83
printing from a Macintosh
computer 84
printing from Windows 84
viewing
reports 161
virtual display
checking, using Embedded Web
Server 160
volatile memory 145
erasing 146
volatility
statement of 145

#### W

waste toner bottle ordering 153 replacing 157 wiping the hard disk 147 wired network setup using Macintosh 51 using Windows 51 Wireless menu 106 wireless network configuration information 45 installation, using Macintosh 48 installation, using Windows 46 wireless network setup in Windows 46 wireless printer setup in Macintosh 48

#### X

XPS menu 137